2009 Chevrolet Impala Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint System 1-1
- Head Restraints 1-2
- Front Seats 1-4
- Rear Seats 1-10
- Safety Belts 1-13
- Child Restraints 1-34
- Airbag System 1-57
- Restraint System Check 1-73

Features and Controls 2-1
- Keys 2-3
- Doors and Locks 2-9
- Windows 2-14
- Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-19
- Mirrors 2-32
- OnStar® System 2-33
- Universal Home Remote System 2-36
- Storage Areas 2-43
- Sunroof 2-44

Instrument Panel 3-1
- Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Climate Controls 3-20
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-24
- Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-42
- Audio System(s) 3-63

Driving Your Vehicle 4-1
- Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 4-2
- Towing 4-26

Service and Appearance Care 5-1
- Service 5-3
- Fuel 5-5
- Checking Things Under the Hood 5-12
- Headlamp Aiming 5-45
- Bulb Replacement 5-45
- Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-51
- Tires 5-53
- Appearance Care 5-89
- Vehicle Identification 5-96
- Electrical System 5-96
- Capacities and Specifications 5-101

Maintenance Schedule 6-1
- Maintenance Schedule 6-2

Customer Assistance Information 7-1
- Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Reporting Safety Defects 7-16
- Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18

Index 1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, the IMPALA Emblem, and the name IMPALA are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. GM reserves the right to make changes after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Chevrolet Motor Division wherever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

Read this manual from beginning to end to learn about the vehicle’s features and controls. Pictures, symbols, and words work together to explain vehicle operation.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 25783631 B Second Printing

Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer/retailer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès de concessionnaire ou à l’adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

1-800-551-4123
www.helminc.com

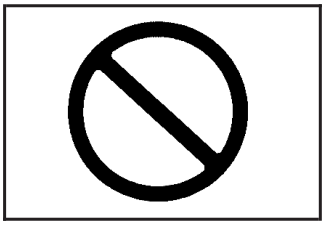
Index

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

©2008 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Warnings and Symbols



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

A box with the word CAUTION is used to tell about things that could hurt you or others if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

Cautions tell what the hazard is and what to do to avoid or reduce the hazard. Read these cautions.

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle.

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

Many times, this damage would not be covered by the vehicle’s warranty, and it could be costly. The notice tells what to do to help avoid the damage.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle which use the same words, CAUTION or Notice.

Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

🕮 **:** This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

🕮 **:** This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar®

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gage

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 1 Seats and Restraint System

Head Restraints 1-2

Front Seats 1-4
- Manual Seats 1-4
- Power Seats 1-5
- Manual Lumbar 1-6
- Heated Seats 1-6
- Reclining Seatbacks 1-7
- Center Seat 1-10

Rear Seats 1-10
- Split Folding Rear Seat 1-10

Safety Belts 1-13
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 1-13
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18
- Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-27
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-32
- Lap Belt 1-32
- Safety Belt Extender 1-33

Child Restraints 1-34
- Older Children 1-34
- Infants and Young Children 1-37
- Child Restraint Systems 1-41
- Where to Put the Restraint 1-43
- Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) 1-45
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-50
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 1-53
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-54

Airbag System 1-57
- Where Are the Airbags? 1-59
- When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-62
- What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
- How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
- What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
- Passenger Sensing System 1-65
- Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71
- Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-72

Restraint System Check 1-73
- Checking the Restraint Systems 1-73
- Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-74

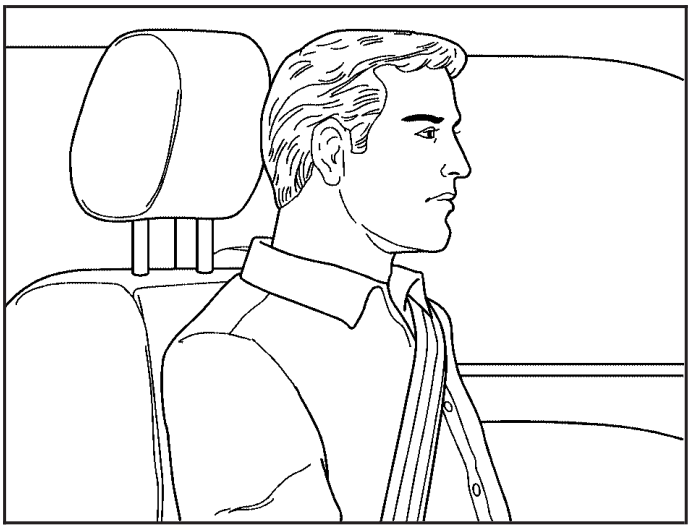
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Head Restraints

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

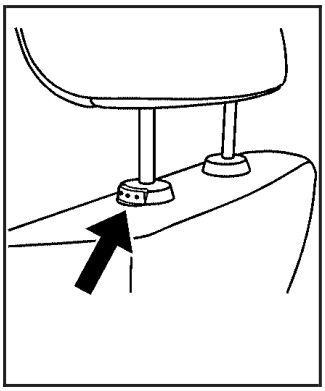
⚠ CAUTION:

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Pull the head restraint up to raise it. To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the restraint down.

Push down on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

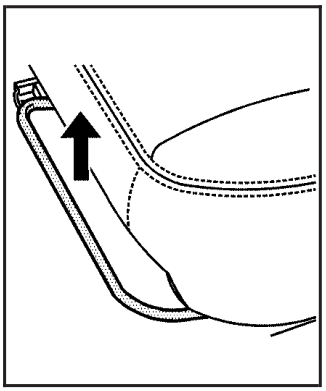
Front Seats

Manual Seats

⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

If the vehicle has a manual seat, it can be moved forward or rearward.

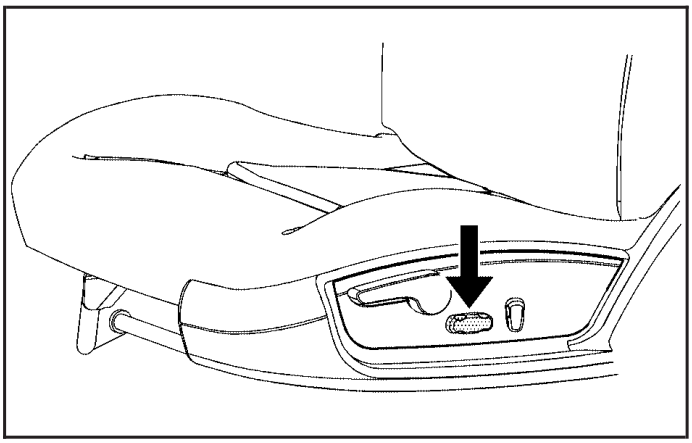


1. Lift the bar to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.

Try to move the seat with your body to be sure the seat is locked in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Seats



Driver Seat with Manual Lumbar, Power Seat Control, and Power Recline shown

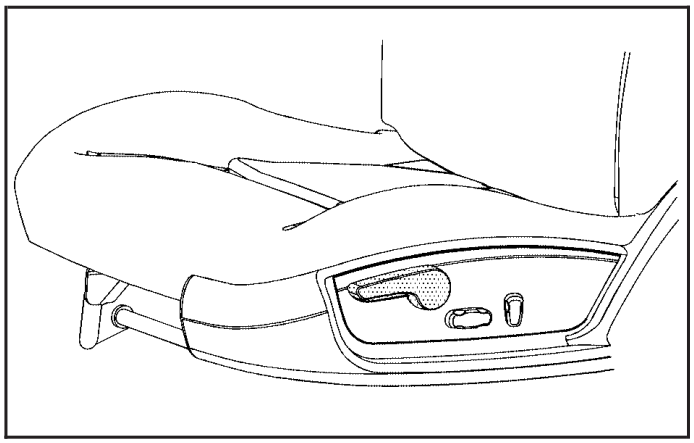
On vehicles with power seats, the controls used to operate them are located on the outboard side of the seats. To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the rear part of the seat cushion by moving the rear of the control up or down.

The driver seat may have power reclining seatbacks. See “Power Reclining Seatbacks” under *Reclining Seatbacks on page 1-7* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

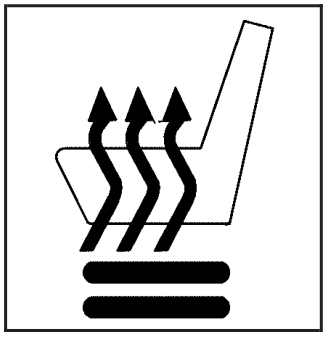
Manual Lumbar



Driver Seat with Manual Lumbar shown

On vehicles with manual lumbar, the lever is located on the outboard side of the driver seat near the front of the seat cushion. Lift up or push down on the lever repeatedly to increase or decrease lumbar support.

Heated Seats



On vehicles with this feature, the buttons that control the driver and front passenger heated seats are located on the climate control panel. See *Climate Control System on page 3-20*.

Press the button to turn on the seat at the high setting. Both lights below the heated seat symbol are lit. Press the button a second time to turn the seat to the low setting. Only the bottom light is lit. Press the button a third time to turn the heated seat off.

The heated seat feature must be turned on again each time the ignition is turned off and back on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reclining Seatbacks

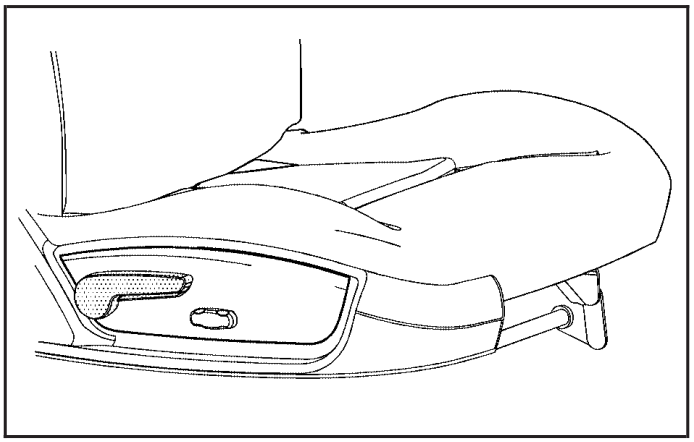
Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ CAUTION:

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a manual driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The sudden movement could startle and confuse you, or make you push a pedal when you do not want to. Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



Passenger Seat with Manual Recline and Power Seat Control shown

To operate a manual reclining seatback:

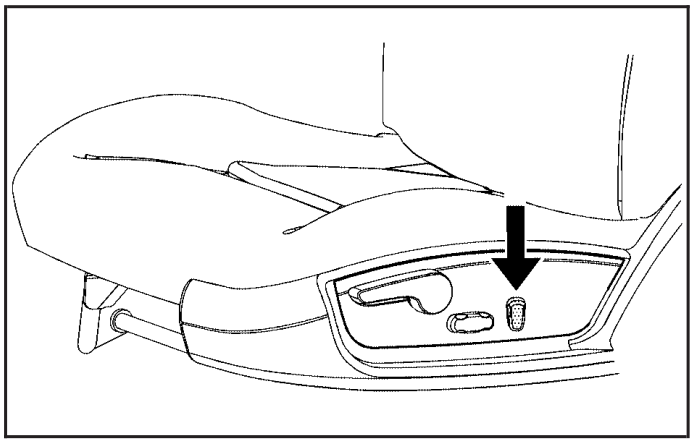
1. Lift the recline lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seatback to an upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatback



Driver Seat with Manual Lumbar, Power Seat Control, and Power Recline shown

The driver seat may have a power reclining seatback. The control used to operate it is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion rear of the horizontal power seat control.

- Press the control rearward to recline the seatback.
- Press the control forward to raise the seatback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

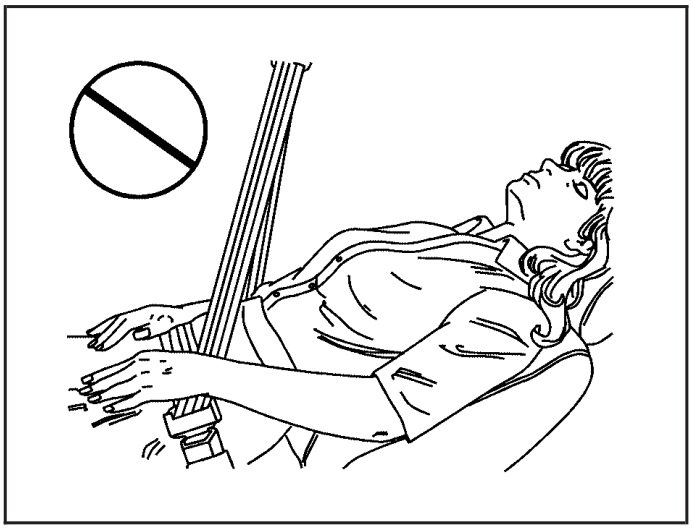
⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job when reclined like this.

The shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt cannot do its job either. In a crash, the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

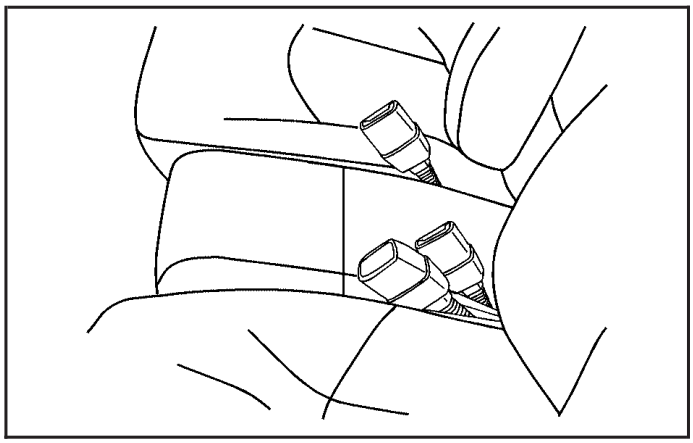
For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.



Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Center Seat



The vehicle may have a front center seat. There are cupholders on the underside of the seat cushion. To use them, flip the seat cushion forward. The seat can also be used as a storage area by lowering the seatback. See *Center Console Storage on page 2-43*.

The seatback doubles as an armrest for the driver or front passenger when the center seat is unoccupied.

Rear Seats

Split Folding Rear Seat

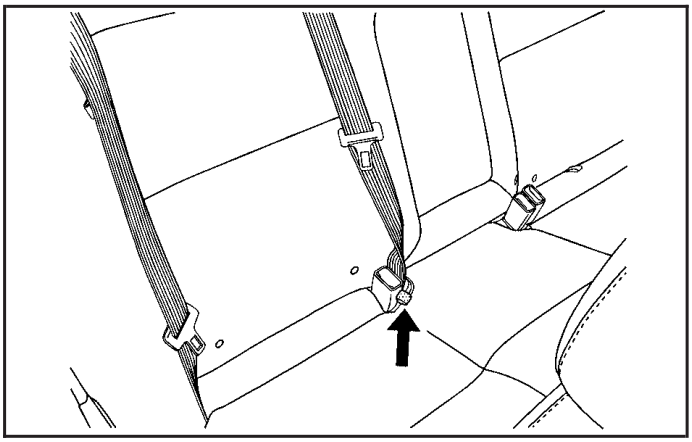
Flip and Fold Feature

On vehicles with this feature, you can flip the bottom seat cushion(s) forward and fold the seatback(s) down to create an extended flat cargo area.

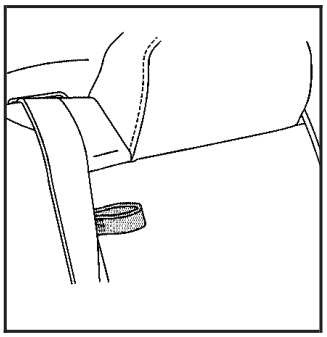
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use this feature:

1. Make sure the front seats are not reclined. If they are, the seat cushion will not flip forward completely.



2. Flip the bottom seat cushion forward by pulling up on the tab located in the center of the seat cushion where the seatback meets the seat cushion.



3. Lower the seatback(s) by pulling forward on the tab located on the outboard side of the seatback(s).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seats to the normal position:

⚠ CAUTION:

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

1. Raise the seatback up and make sure it latches.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

2. Ensure that the safety belts are properly stowed over the seatback in all three positions.
3. Flip the bottom seat cushion back into place. Push firmly on the seat cushion to make sure it is secure.

When the seat is not in use, the seatback should be placed in an upright, locked position, and the seat cushion should be in the down position.

Under Seat Storage

The vehicle also has an under seat storage area.

To access the storage area, lift up on the tab located in the center of the bottom seat cushion where the seat cushion meets the seatback. See *Rear Storage Area on page 2-43* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, the injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle harder or be ejected from the vehicle. You and your passenger(s) can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-27* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts. Here is why:

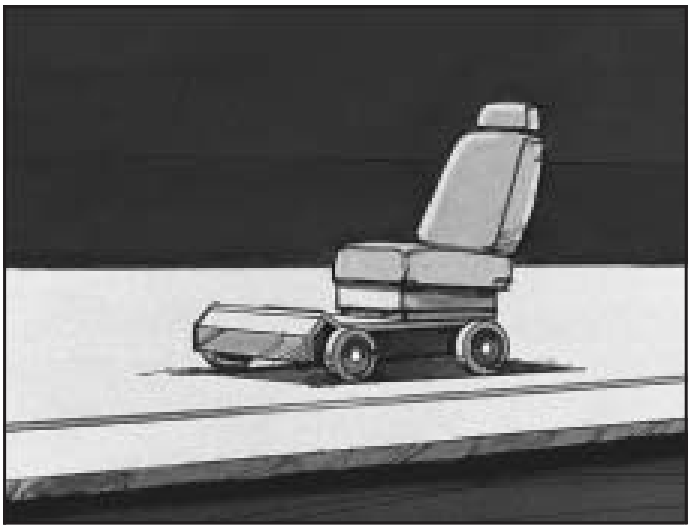
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a serious one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without safety belts, they could have been badly hurt or killed.

After more than 40 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

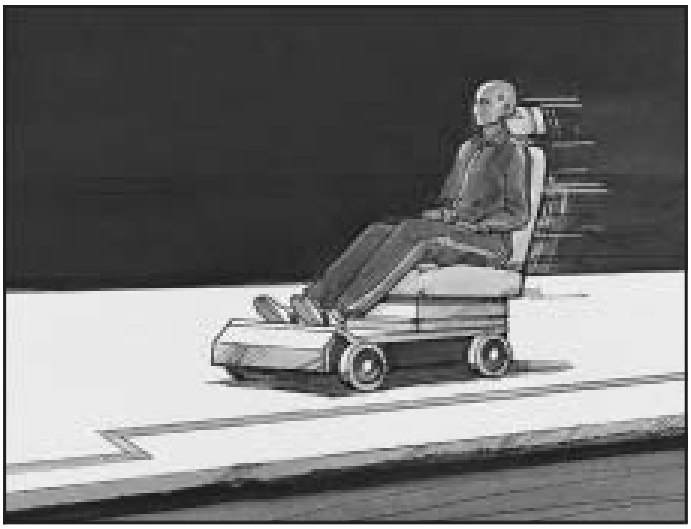
Why Safety Belts Work

When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.

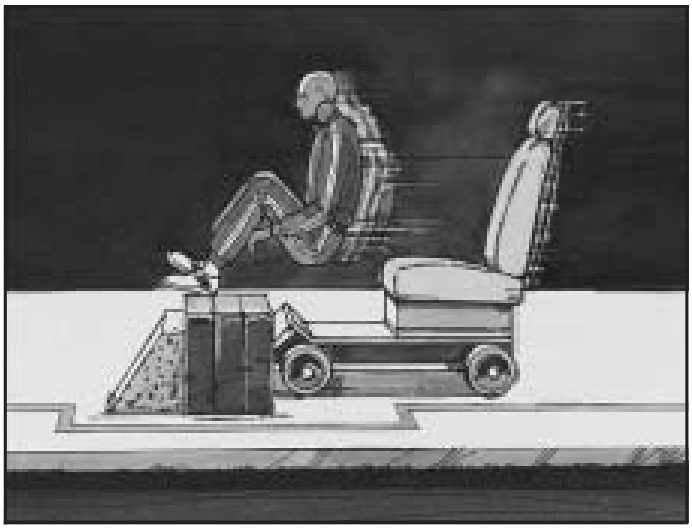


Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



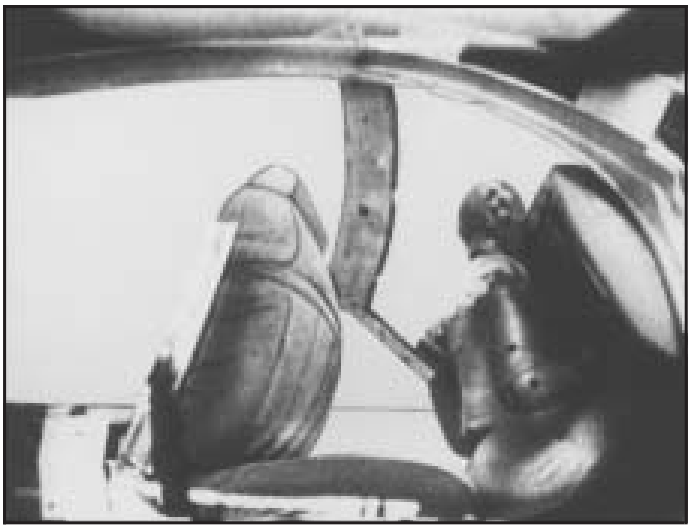
Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted. And you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in a crash — even one that is not your fault — you and your passenger(s) can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

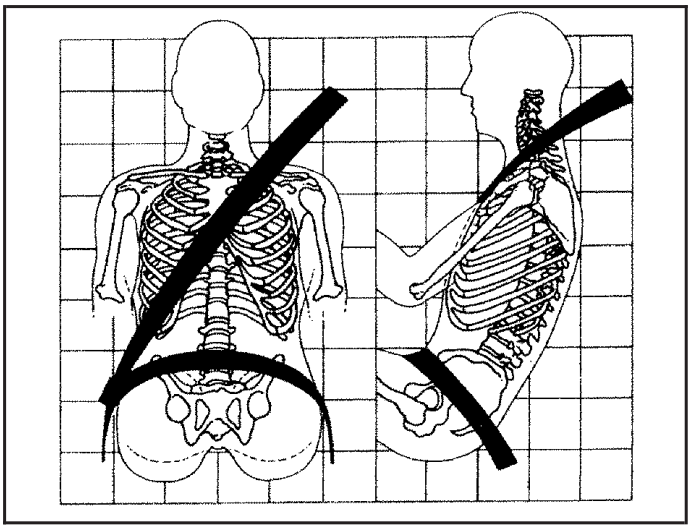
Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-34* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-37*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Occupants who are not buckled up can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

First, before you or your passenger(s) wear a safety belt, there is important information you should know.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



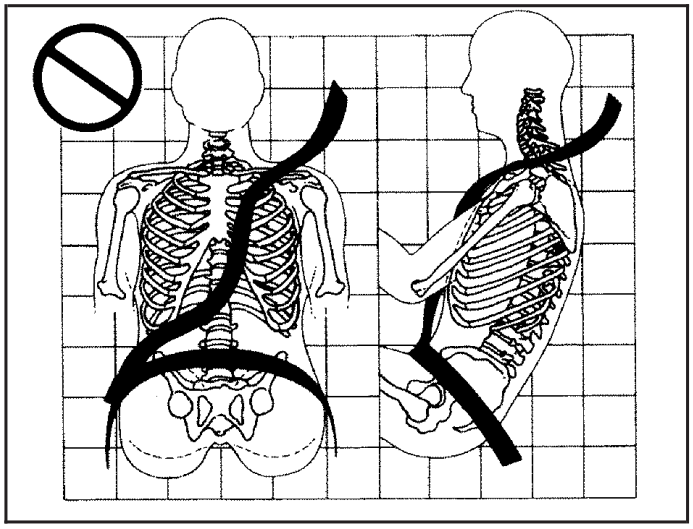
Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you. The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



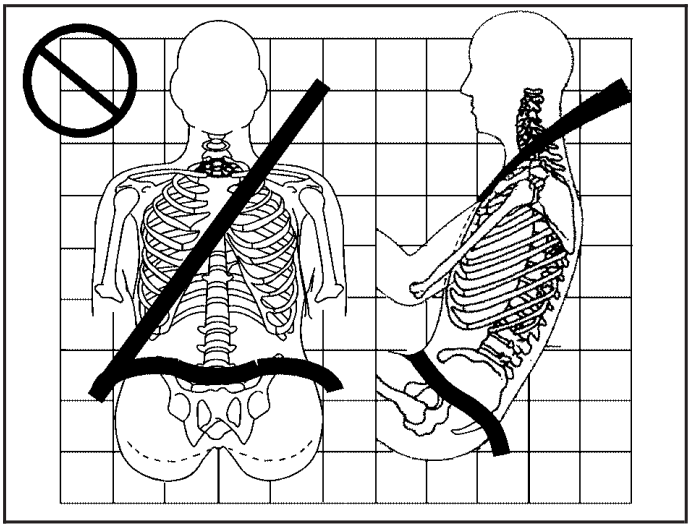
A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit snugly against your body.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



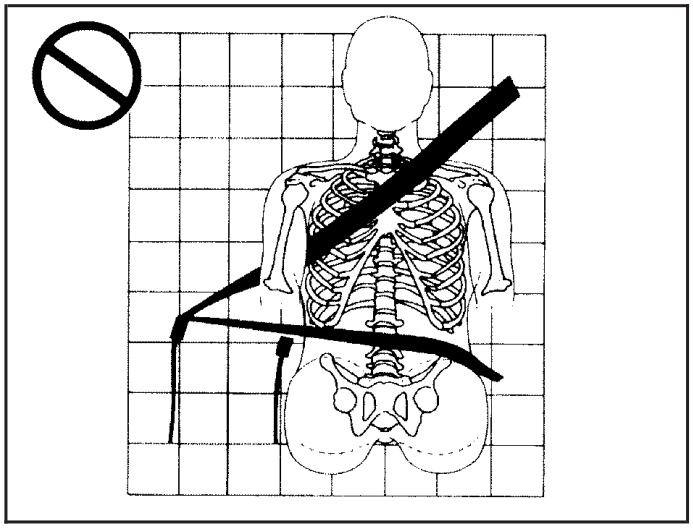
A: The lap belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your lap belt is too loose. In a crash, you could slide under the lap belt and apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The lap belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



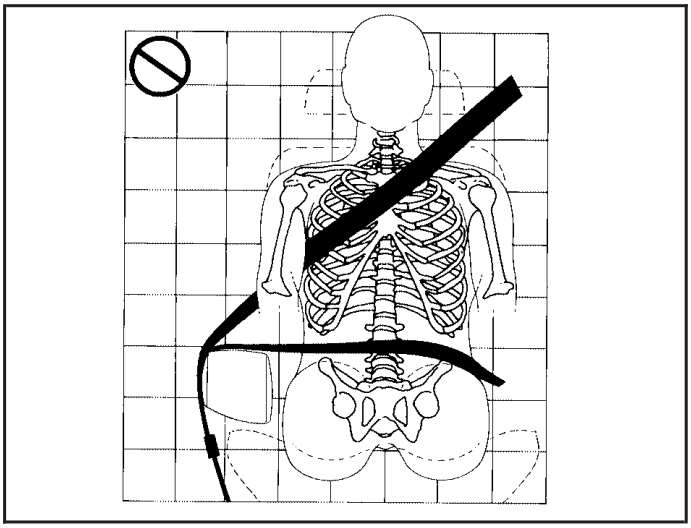
A: The belt is buckled in the wrong buckle.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not on the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



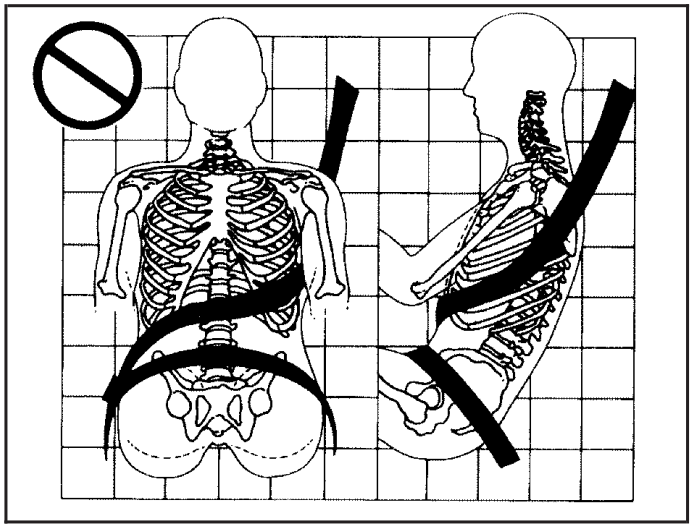
A: The belt is over an armrest.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied on the abdomen, not on the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



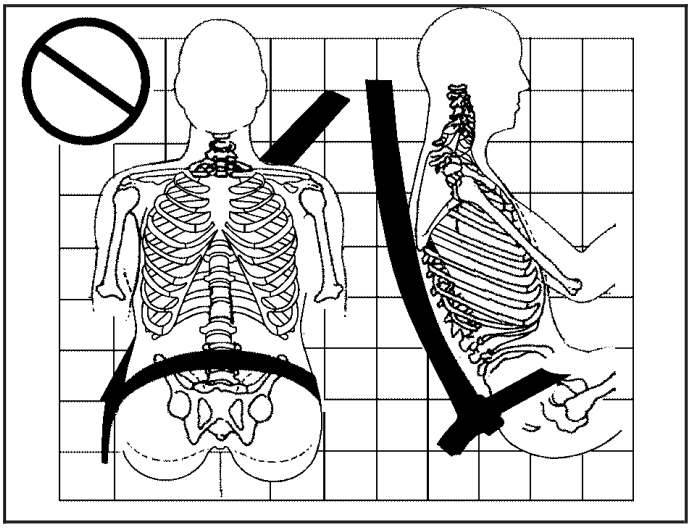
A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



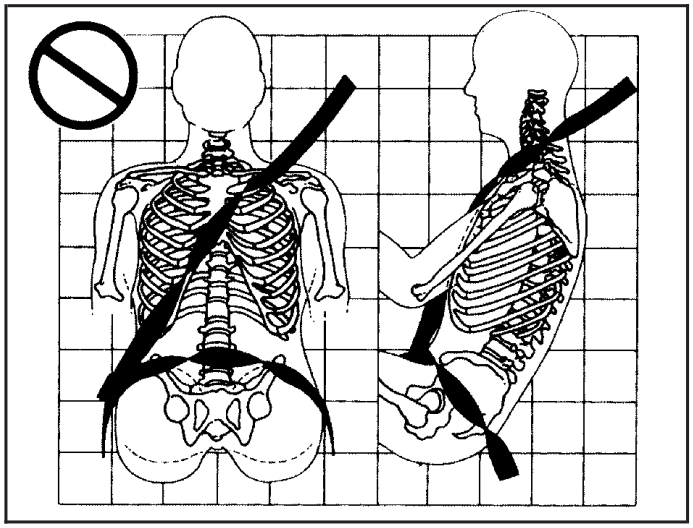
A: The belt is behind the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, you would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. Your body could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. You might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer/retailer to fix it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder except for the center front passenger position, if your vehicle has one, which has a lap belt. See *Lap Belt on page 1-32* for more information.

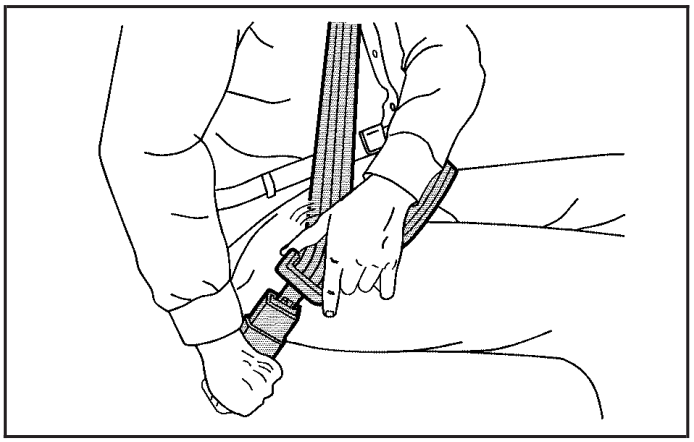
The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.
2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

   Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the right front seating position may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

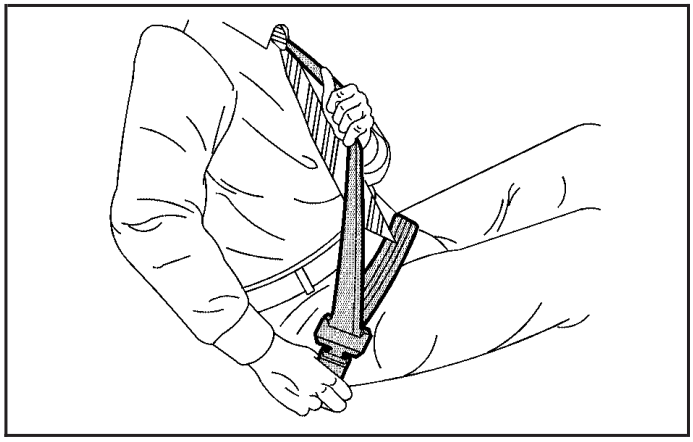
   If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-33*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

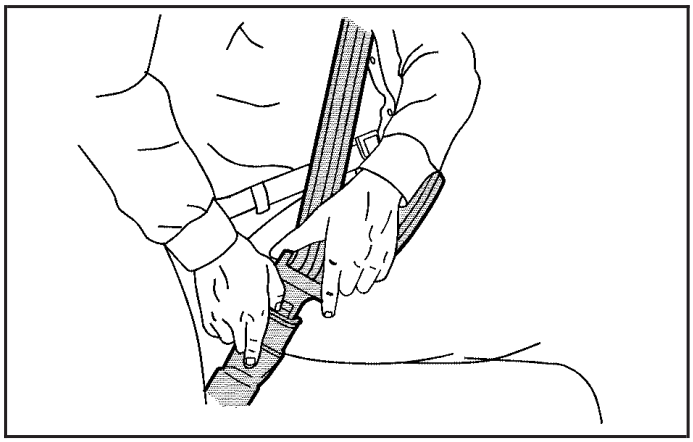
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjustment” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

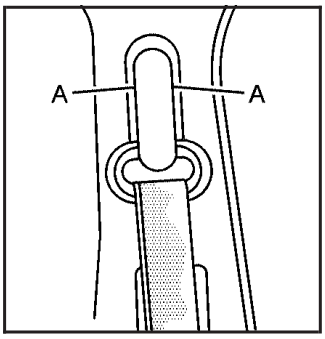
Before a door is closed, be sure the belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has shoulder belt height adjusters for the driver and right front passenger positions.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on the shoulder. The belt should be away from the face and neck, but not falling off the shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.



Squeeze the buttons (A) on the sides of the height adjuster and move the height adjuster to the desired position.

You can move the adjuster up just by pushing up on the shoulder belt guide.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without squeezing the buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, if the vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash on page 1-74*.

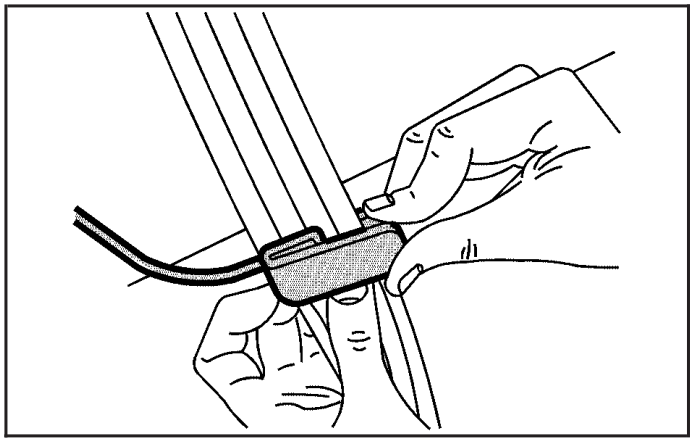
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

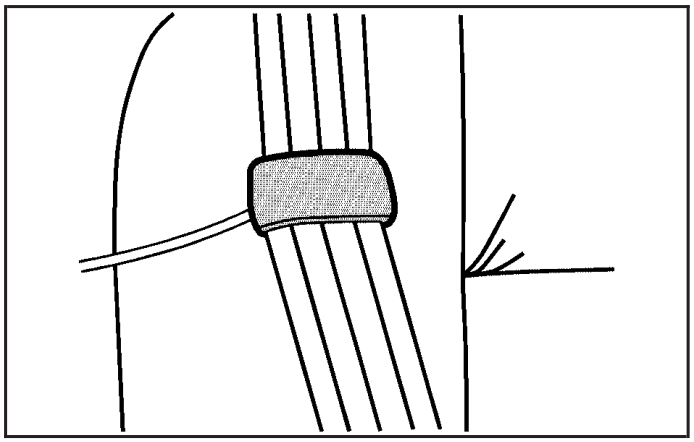
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide for each outboard passenger position in the rear seat. Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:

1. Pull the guide out from the pocket on the edge of the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.

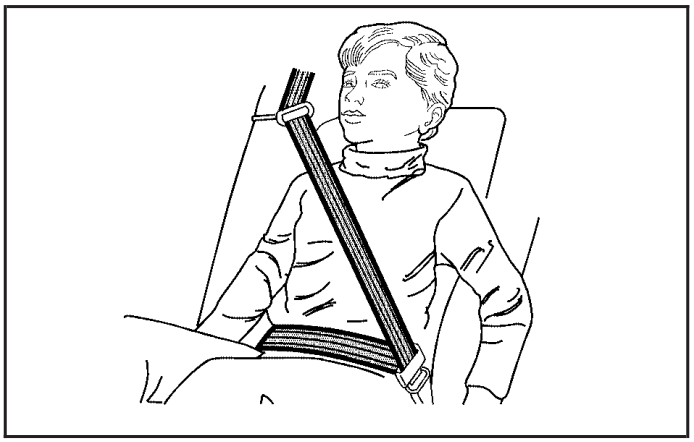


3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



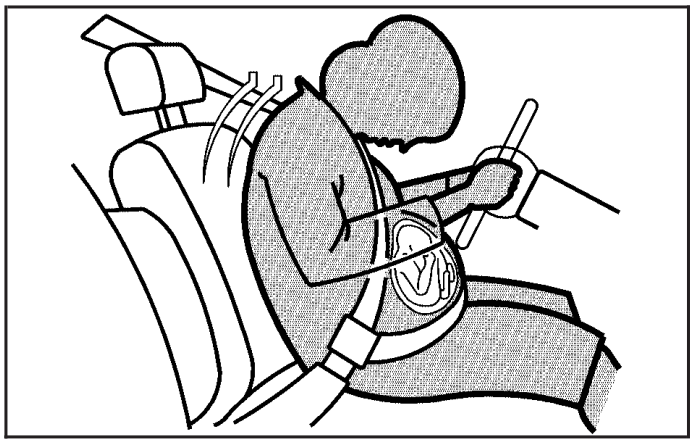
4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide into the storage pocket on the edge of the seatback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



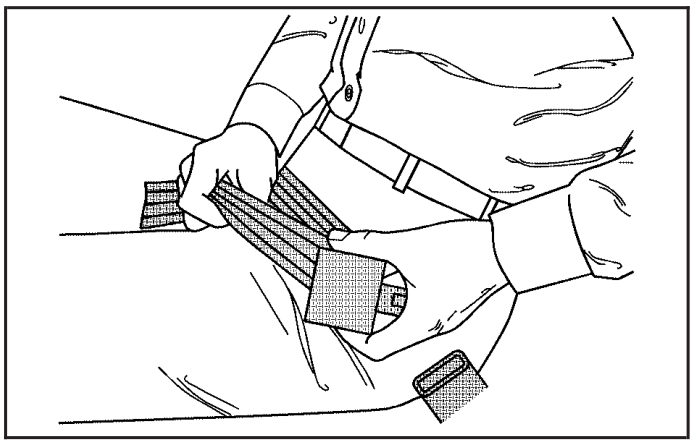
A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Lap Belt

This section is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt, see *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-27*.

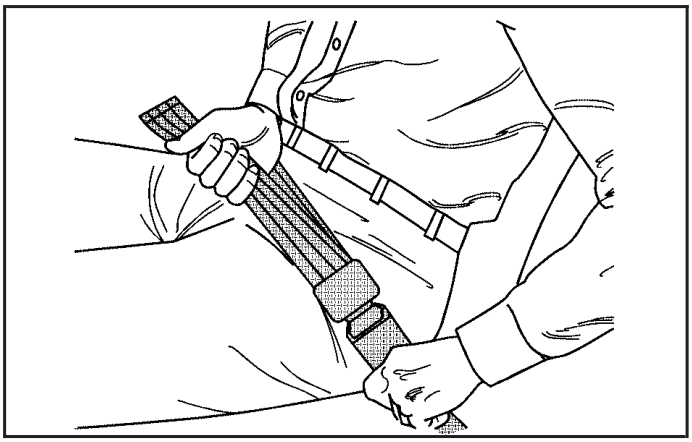
Your vehicle may have a center seating position. When you sit in the center front seating position, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor.



To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.

Buckle, position, and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-33*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

Safety Belt Extender

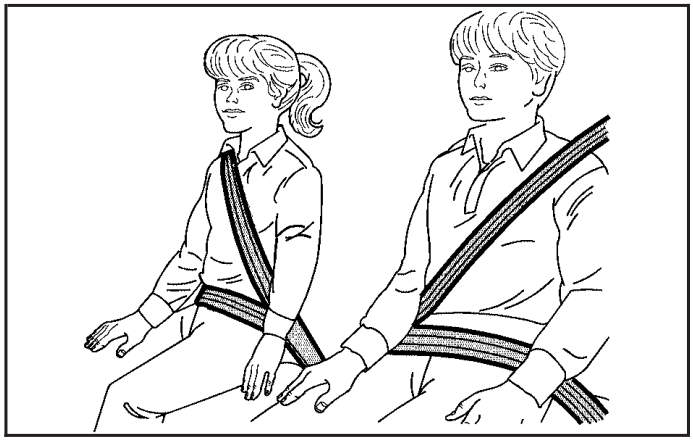
If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer/retailer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat, state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the below fit test:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-27* for more information. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for length of trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

If you have the choice, a child should sit in a position with a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see "Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 1-27*.

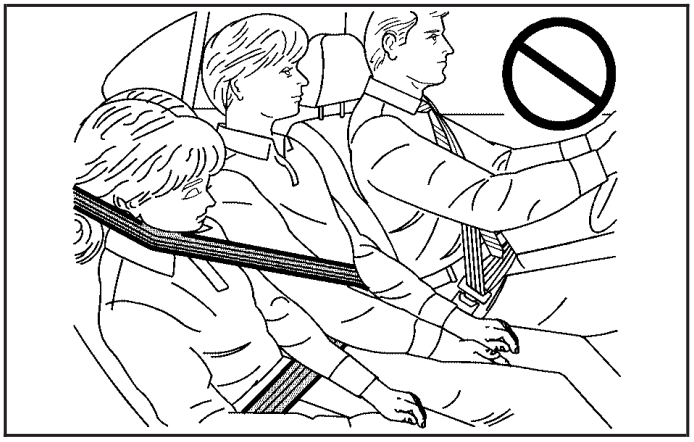
According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never allow two children to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

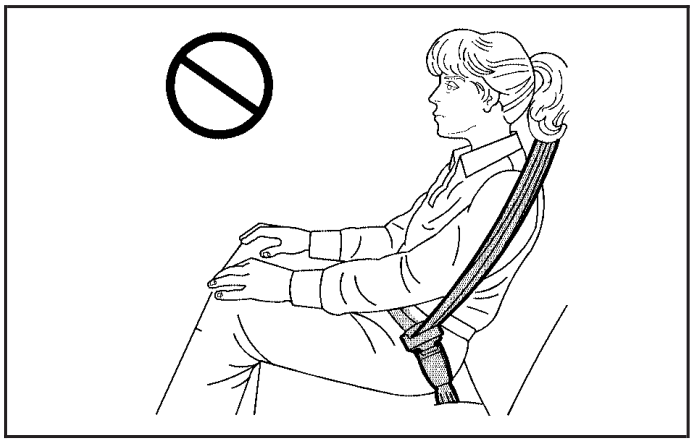


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

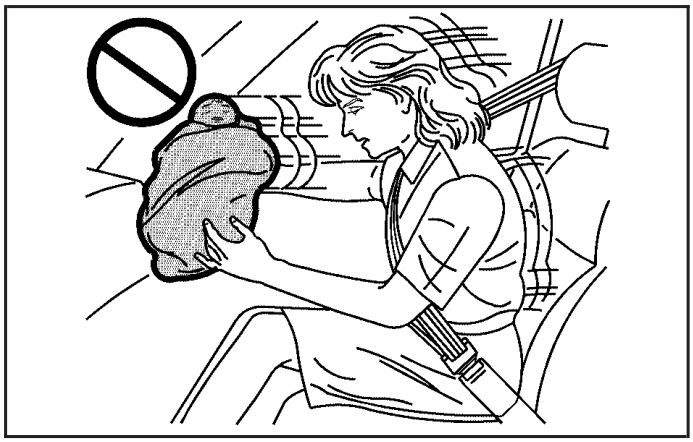
Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) infant will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

⚠ CAUTION:

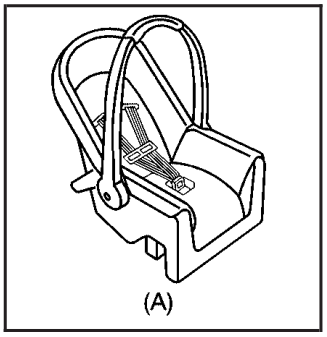
To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. This is because an infant's neck is not fully developed and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child restraint settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

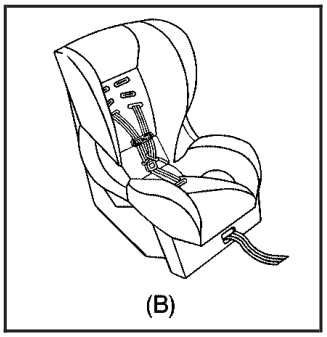
A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems


(A)

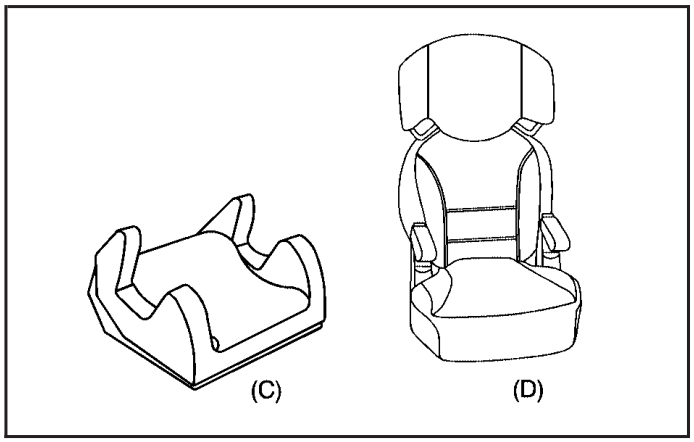
A rear-facing infant seat (A) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.


(B)

A forward-facing child seat (B) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A booster seat (C-D) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ CAUTION:

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle's safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for more information. A child can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

> **⚠ CAUTION:**
>
> A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

We recommend that children and child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

The LATCH system holds a child restraint during driving or in a crash. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier. The LATCH system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the child restraint that are made for use with the LATCH system.

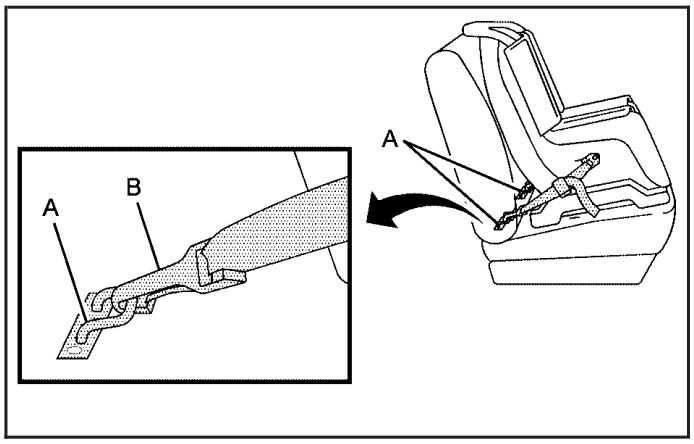
Make sure that a LATCH-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in your vehicle.

Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments.

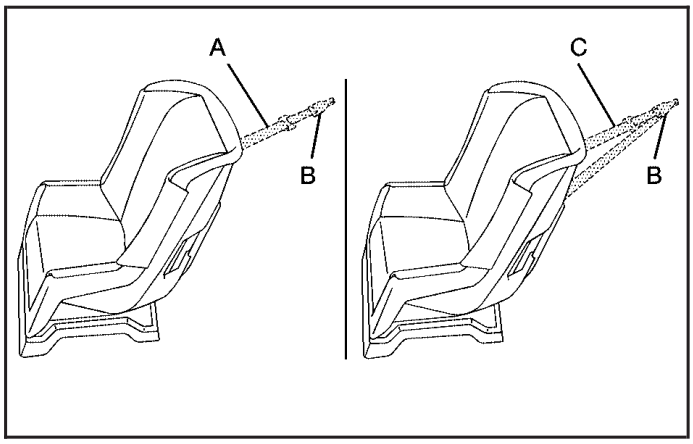
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (A) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (B).

Top Tether Anchor



A top tether (A, C) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (B) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

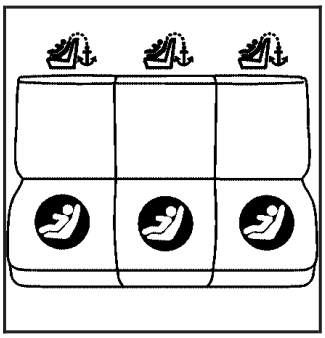
Your child restraint may have a single tether (A) or a dual tether (C). Either will have a single attachment (B) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

If the child restraint does not have a top tether, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor): Seating positions with top tether anchors.

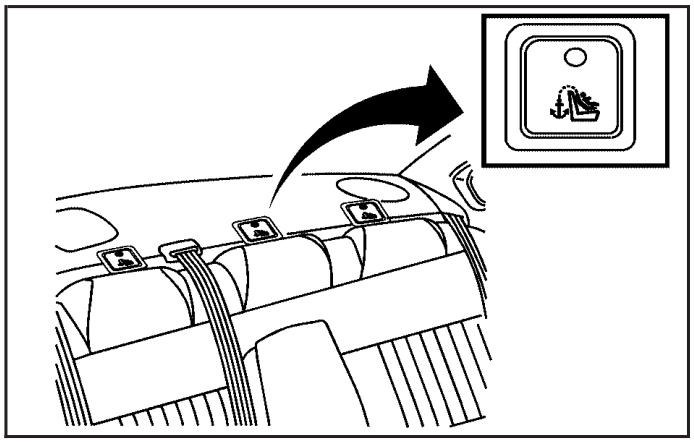
(Lower Anchor): Seating positions with two lower anchors.

To assist you in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

To assist you in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is located on the cover.

The top tether anchors are located under the covers on the rear seatback filler panel behind each head restraint. Be sure to use an anchor located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-43* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor.

⚠ CAUTION:

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if your vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

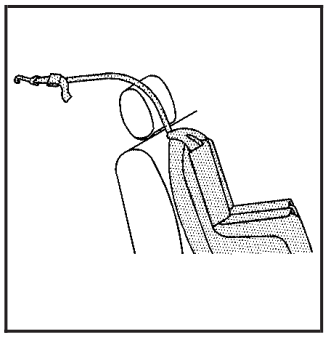
Notice: **Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.**

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

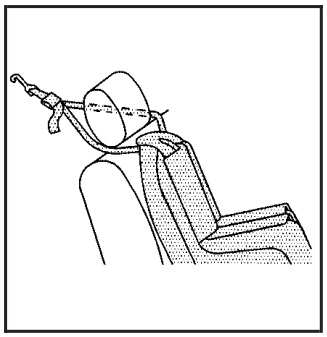
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. Push on the depression at the rear of the cover and swing the lid open to expose the top tether anchor.
   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the position you are using has a fixed headrest and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the head restraint.



If the position you are using has a fixed headrest and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the head restraint.

3. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for top tether anchor locations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

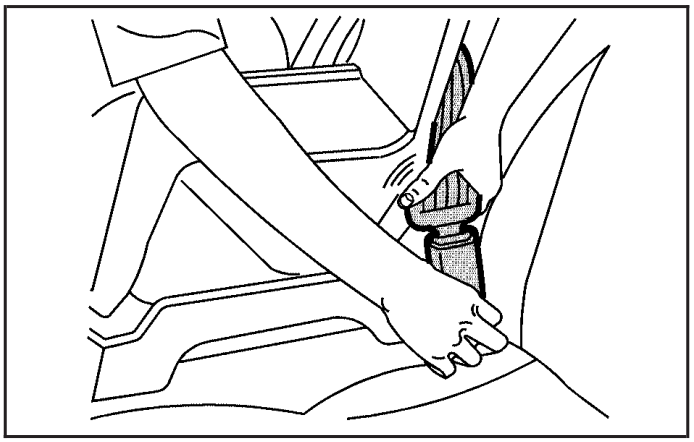
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-43*.

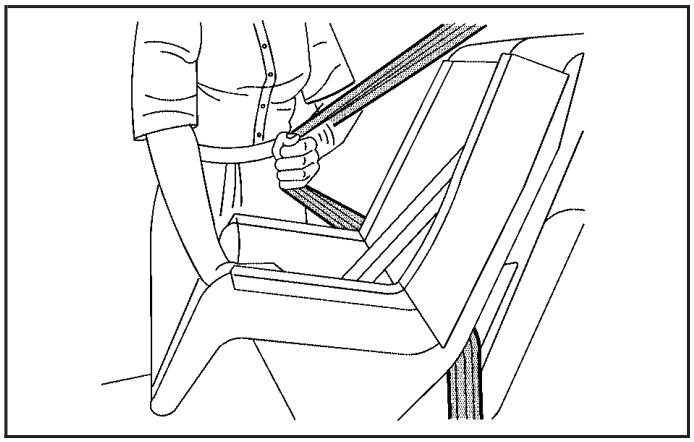
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



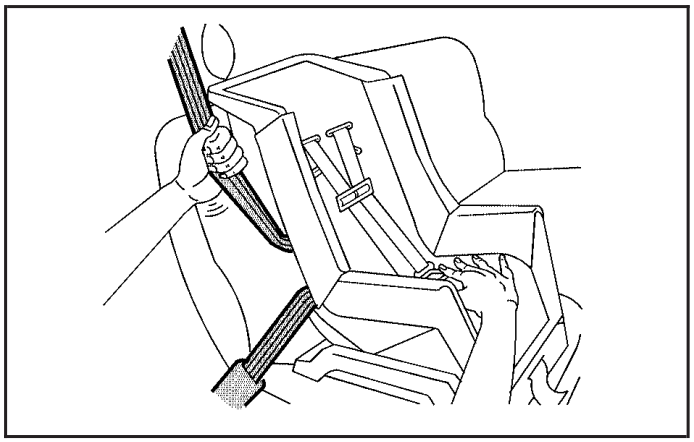
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for more information.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a child restraint in the center front seat can be badly injured or killed by the frontal airbags if they inflate. Never secure a child restraint in the center front seat. It is always better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

Do not use child restraints in the center front seat position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-43*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-29* for more information, including important safety information.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) on page 1-45* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

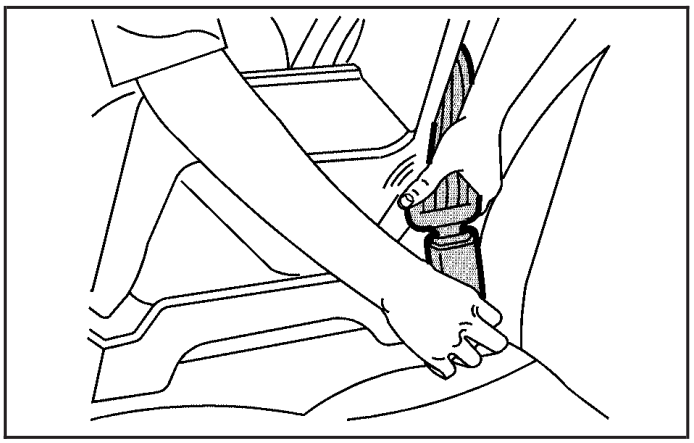
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when the vehicle is started. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-29*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

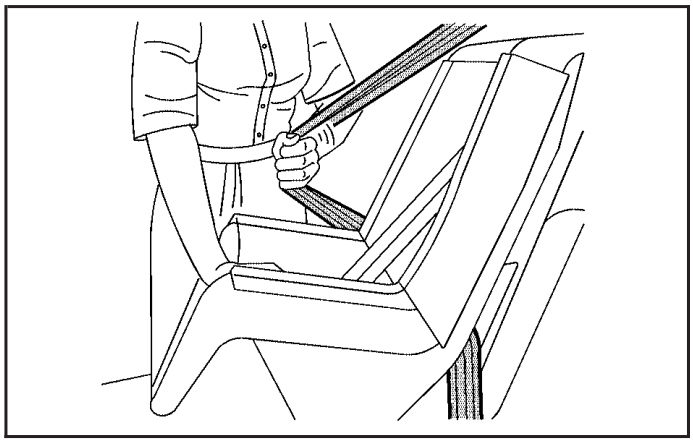
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



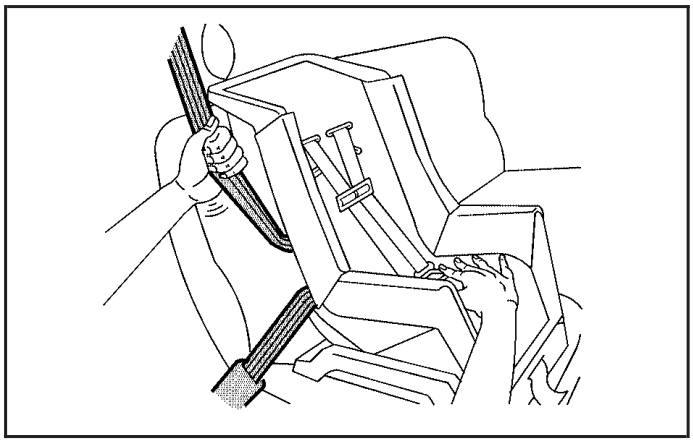
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

If the airbag is off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the right front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the right front passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the right front passenger and passenger seated directly behind the right front passenger.

All of the airbags in the vehicle will have the word AIRBAG embossed in the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the middle part of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the right front passenger.

With seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

With roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG will appear along the headliner or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today’s airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, but do not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to deploy in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are your only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-62*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the safety belts. Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

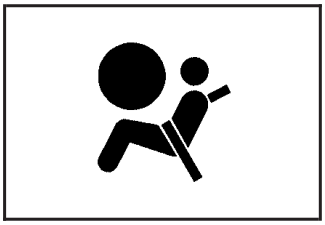
Airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to the airbag, as you would be if you were sitting on the edge of your seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-34* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-37*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The right front passenger frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger side.

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Side shown, Passenger Side similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, right front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries mainly to the driver's or right front passenger's head and chest. However, they are only designed to inflate if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a moving object.
- If the vehicle hits an object that deforms, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits an object that does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole), the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle, the airbags could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

Thresholds can also vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has dual-stage frontal airbags. Dual-stage airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors, which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate frontal impact and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, dual-stage airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

The vehicle has seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags. See *Airbag System on page 1-57*.
Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags are intended to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed threshold level. The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roof-rail airbags are not intended to inflate in rollovers or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is intended to deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck. Both roof-rail airbags will deploy when either side of the vehicle is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by what the vehicle hits, the angle of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down. For seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags, deployment is determined by the location and severity of the side impact.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover and deploy. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For vehicles with seat-mounted side impact airbags, there are airbag modules in the side of the front seatbacks closest to the door. For vehicles with roof-rail airbags, there are airbag modules in the ceiling of the vehicle, near the side windows that have occupant seating positions.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Frontal airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. Seat-mounted side impact and roof-rail airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-62* for more information.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they deploy. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, and turn the hazard warning flashers on when the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

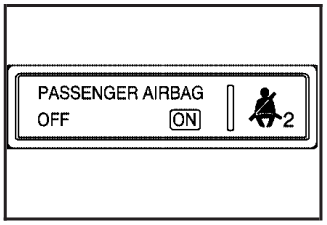
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

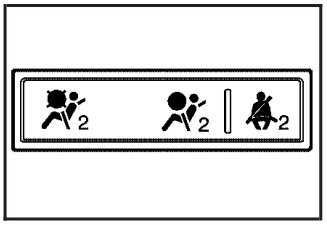
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 7-18* and *Event Data Recorders on page 7-18*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer/retailer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will be visible on the instrument panel when the vehicle is started.



United States



Canada

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-29*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver airbag, seat-mounted side impact airbags, and roof-rail airbags are not affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the right front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

We recommend that children be secured in a rear seat, including: an infant or a child riding in a rear-facing child restraint; a child riding in a forward-facing child seat; an older child riding in a booster seat; and children, who are large enough, using safety belts.

A label on the sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag if:

- The right front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- Or, if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-29*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on (may inflate) the right front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for more information, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the On Indicator is Lit for a Child Restraint

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-54*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints on page 1-2*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's seating posture and body build. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Off Indicator is Lit for an Adult-Size Occupant

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat.

If this happens, use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the right front passenger frontal airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-72* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

A wet seat can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Here is how:

- The passenger sensing system may turn off the passenger airbag when liquid is soaked into the seat. If this happens, the off indicator will be lit, and the airbag readiness light on the instrument panel will also be lit.
- Liquid pooled on the seat that has not soaked in may make it more likely that the passenger sensing system will enable (turn on) the passenger airbag while a child restraint or child occupant is on the seat. If the passenger airbag is turned on, the on indicator will be lit.

If the passenger seat gets wet, dry the seat immediately. If the airbag readiness light is lit, do not install a child restraint or allow anyone to occupy the seat. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to or change about the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring can affect the operation of the airbag system.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the right front passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger's seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery or trim, or with GM covers, upholstery or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65*.

If you have any questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my airbag system?

A: If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

In addition, your dealer/retailer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module and airbag wiring.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Restraint System Check

Checking the Restraint Systems

Safety Belts

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly.

Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer/retailer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 3-27* for more information.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Care of Safety Belts on page 5-92*.

Airbags

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for more information.

Notice: **If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag covers, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbag modules, see *What Makes an Airbag Inflate? on page 1-63*. See your dealer/retailer for service.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has been in a crash, do you need new safety belts or LATCH system (if equipped) parts?

After a very minor crash, nothing may be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer/retailer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt or LATCH system (if equipped), was not being used at the time of the crash.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, if the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started, or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 2-3
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-5
- Remote Vehicle Start 2-7

Doors and Locks 2-9
- Door Locks 2-9
- Power Door Locks 2-10
- Delayed Locking 2-10
- Automatic Door Lock 2-10
- Programmable Automatic Door Unlock 2-11
- Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
- Lockout Protection 2-12
- Trunk 2-12

Windows 2-14
- Power Windows 2-15
- Sun Visors 2-16

Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
- Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-17
- PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-18

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-19
- New Vehicle Break-In 2-19
- Ignition Positions 2-20
- Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-21
- Starting the Engine 2-21
- Engine Coolant Heater 2-22
- Active Fuel Management™ (5.3L V8 Engine) 2-23
- Automatic Transmission Operation 2-24
- Parking Brake 2-26
- Shifting Into Park 2-27
- Shifting Out of Park 2-29
- Parking Over Things That Burn 2-30
- Engine Exhaust 2-30
- Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-31

Mirrors 2-32
- Manual Rearview Mirror 2-32
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 2-32
- Outside Power Mirrors 2-32
- Outside Convex Mirror 2-33
- Outside Heated Mirrors 2-33

OnStar® System 2-33

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 2 Features and Controls

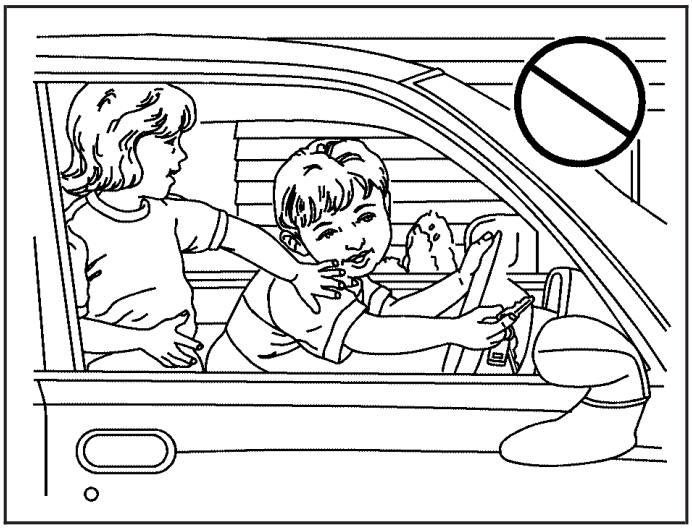
Universal Home Remote System 2-36
Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED) 2-37
Storage Areas 2-43
Glove Box 2-43
Cupholders 2-43
Sunglasses Storage Compartment 2-43
Center Console Storage 2-43
Rear Storage Area 2-43
Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
Convenience Net 2-43
Sunroof 2-44

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the keys in the ignition and children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



The key can be used for the ignition and the driver's door.

See your dealer/retailer if a replacement key or additional key is needed.

Notice: **If you ever lock your keys in the vehicle, you may have to damage the vehicle to get in. Be sure you have spare keys.**

If you are locked out of your vehicle, contact Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-8* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If this vehicle has the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system, it operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range, try this:

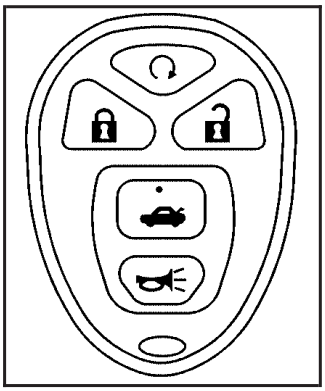
- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle. Stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer/retailer or a qualified technician for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions work up to 195 feet (60 m) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*.



With Remote Start Shown, Without Remote Start Similar

(Remote Vehicle Start): For vehicles with this feature, press to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for additional information.

(Lock): Press to lock all the doors. If enabled through the Driver Information Center (DIC), the parking lamps flash once to indicate locking has occurred. If enabled through the DIC, the horn chirps when is pressed again within five seconds. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57* for additional information.

Pressing may arm the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16*.

(Unlock): Press once to unlock the driver door. If is pressed again within five seconds, all remaining doors unlock. The interior lamps come on and stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on. If enabled through the DIC, the parking lamps flash twice to indicate unlocking has occurred. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57*.

Pressing on the RKE transmitter disarms the content theft-deterrent system. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16*.

(Remote Trunk Release): Press and hold for about one second to unlock the trunk. The transmission must be in P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release to locate the vehicle. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times. Press and hold for more than two seconds to activate the panic alarm. The turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds repeatedly for 30 seconds. The alarm turns off when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN or is pressed again. The ignition must be in LOCK/OFF for the panic alarm to work.

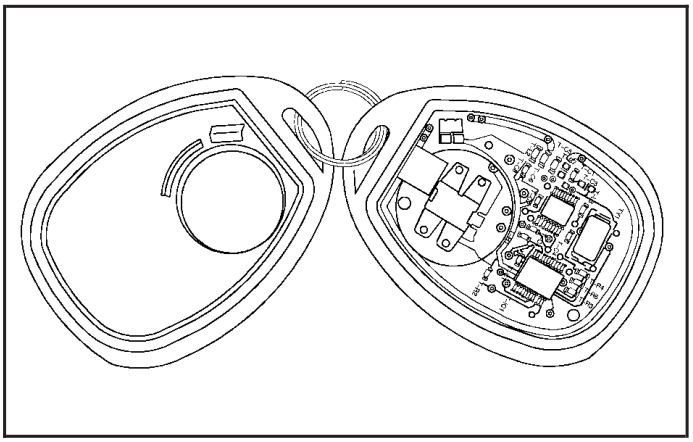
Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer/retailer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to the vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be programmed. Any lost or stolen transmitters no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See “Remote Key” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-42*.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC. See “REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for additional information.

Notice: **When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.**



To replace the battery:

1. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the notch on the side.
2. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
4. Snap the transmitter back together.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Vehicle Start

Your vehicle may have a remote starting feature that allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may also start the vehicle's heating or air conditioning systems and rear window defogger. When the remote start system is active and the vehicle has an automatic climate control system, it will automatically regulate the inside temperature. Normal operation of these systems will return after the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN.

Laws in some communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view when doing so. Check local regulations for any requirements on remote starting of vehicles.

Do not use the remote start feature if your vehicle is low on fuel. Your vehicle may run out of fuel.

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, the RKE transmitter functions will have an increased range of operation. However, the range may be less while the vehicle is running.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System on page 2-4*

(Remote Start): This button will be on the RKE transmitter if you have remote start.

To start the vehicle using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release the transmitter's lock button, then immediately press and hold the transmitter's remote start button for two to four seconds or until the vehicle's turn signal lamps flash. The doors will lock.

   When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps turn on and remain on while the engine is running.

The remote start feature provides two separate starts per ignition cycle, each with 10 minutes of engine running time, or one start with a time extension. The first start must expire or be canceled to get two separate 10 minute starts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If it is the first remote start since the vehicle has been driven, repeat the previous steps, while the engine is still running, to extend the engine running time by 10 minutes from the time you repeat the steps for remote starting. The remote start running time can be extended one time and only after the first remote start.

After entering the vehicle during a remote start, insert and turn the key to ON/RUN to drive the vehicle.

The engine will shut off automatically after 10 minutes, unless a time extension has been done or the vehicle's key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to ON/RUN.

To manually shut off a remote start, do any of the following.

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and release the remote start button.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the ignition switch out of LOCK/OFF position and then back to LOCK/OFF.

After the engine has been started two times, or one time with a time extension, the vehicle's ignition must be turned to ON/RUN using the key before the remote start procedure can be used again. See *Ignition Positions on page 2-20* for information regarding the ignition positions on your vehicle.

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if any of the follow occur:

- The remote start system is disabled through the DIC.
- The vehicle's key is in the ignition.
- The vehicle's hood is open.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The check engine light is on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-36*.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- The content theft-deterrent alarm has been activated.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or one start with a time extension, have already been provided for that ignition cycle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.

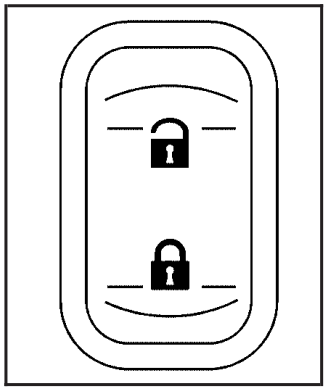
From the outside, use the key in the driver door or use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock and unlock the vehicle. From the inside, use the manual or power door locks.

To lock or unlock the driver side door from the outside with the key, insert the key and turn it clockwise or counterclockwise.

To lock or unlock the door from the inside, push or pull the manual lock knob.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Door Locks



A power door lock switch is located on both front doors next to the door handle.

Press the top of the switch to unlock all doors or press the bottom of the switch to lock all doors.

If the vehicle has the optional content theft-deterrent system and it is armed, the power door lock switches will be disabled. You must use the RKE transmitter or the key to unlock the doors when the system is armed. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16*.

Delayed Locking

This feature allows the driver to delay the actual locking of the doors. When the driver power door lock switch is pressed with the key removed from the ignition, and the driver door open, a chime will sound three times to signal that the delayed locking system is active. When all doors have been closed, the doors will lock automatically after several seconds. If any door is opened before this, the timer will reset itself once all the doors have been closed again.

Pressing the driver or passenger power door lock switch again or the RKE transmitter button will override this feature.

Personal Choice Programming

The delayed locking feature can be turned on or off, using the Driver Information Center (DIC) to program this feature. See “DELAY DOOR LOCK” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57*.

Automatic Door Lock

The doors will automatically lock when the shift lever is moved out of P (Park). The automatic door locking feature cannot be disabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Programmable Automatic Door Unlock

The vehicle is programmed so that when the shift lever is moved into P (Park) all doors will unlock.

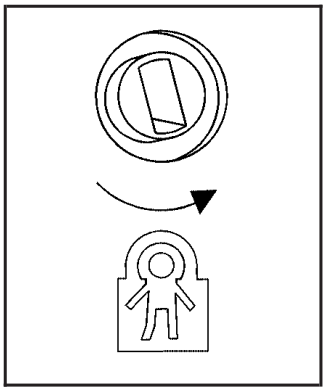
With the vehicle stopped and the engine running, door unlocking can be programmed through prompts displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC). These prompts allow the driver to choose various unlock settings. For programming information, see *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57*.

Rear Door Security Locks

Rear door security locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.

The rear door security locks are located on the inside edge of each rear door. The rear doors must be opened to access them.

To assist in finding the lock, the vehicle has the following:



To use the lock:

1. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the horizontal position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To open a rear door when the security lock is on, do the following:

1. Unlock the door using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if the vehicle has one, the power door lock switch, or by lifting the rear door manual lock.
2. Open the door from the outside.

To cancel the rear door security lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Insert the key into the security lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the vertical position.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

Lockout Protection

This feature helps prevent you from locking the doors while the key is in the ignition. Always remember to take your key with you when exiting the vehicle.

If the lock switch is pressed on the door that is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the open door will unlock. A chime sounds continuously until the driver door is closed.

Trunk

⚠ CAUTION:

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate, trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate, or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-30*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk Release

To open the trunk from the outside, press the trunk release button on the RKE transmitter, if equipped.

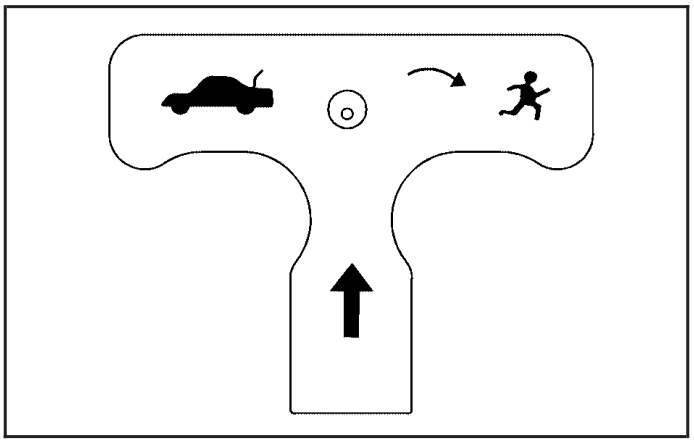
Remote Trunk Release

(Remote Trunk Release): Press the button located next to the exterior lamps control on the left side of the instrument panel to open the trunk. The shift lever must be in P (Park).

The trunk can also be opened by lowering the rear seat and pulling the emergency trunk release handle located inside the trunk. See *Split Folding Rear Seat on page 1-10* and “Emergency Trunk Release Handle” following.

Emergency Trunk Release Handle

Notice: **Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle. The emergency trunk release handle is only intended to aid a person trapped in a latched trunk, enabling them to open the trunk from the inside.**



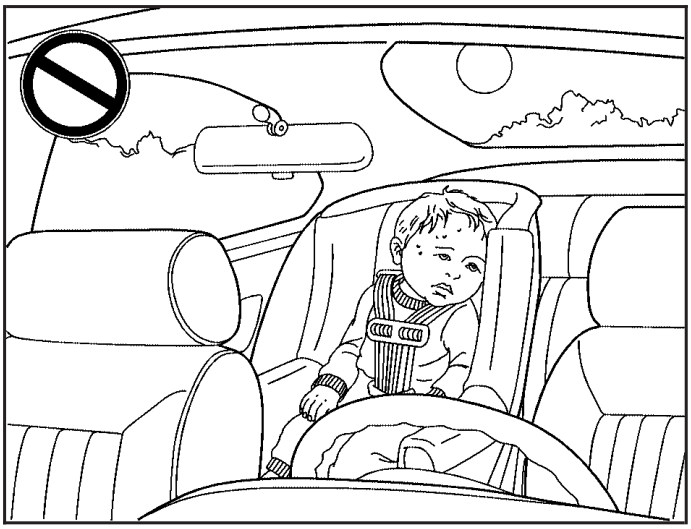
There is a glow-in-the-dark trunk release handle located on the latch inside the trunk. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle to open the trunk from the inside.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



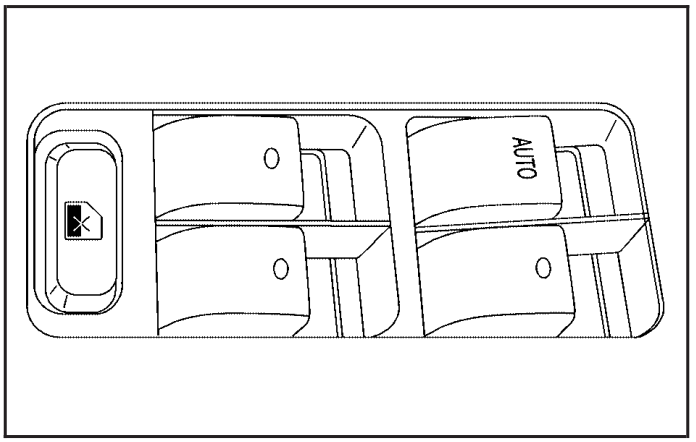
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons, children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.



The switches on the driver door armrest are used to control each of the windows. Each passenger door has its own window switch.

The power window switches work while the ignition is in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or while Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-21*.

To lower the window, press and hold the front of the switch to the first position until the window is at the desired level. To raise the window, pull up and hold the front of the switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Express-Down Window

The driver window switch has an express-down feature labeled AUTO. This lets you lower the window completely without holding the switch. Press the front of the switch to the second position and release.

To stop the window while it is lowering, briefly pull up on the switch.

Window Lockout

(Window Lockout): The driver window switches also include a lockout switch. Press the right side of the switch to prevent the rear passengers from using their window switches. The driver can still control all the windows and the front passenger can control their own window with the lockout on. Press the left side of the switch to return to normal window operation. A red bar on the right side of the switch indicates that the lockout is off.

Sun Visors

To block out glare, swing down the sun visors. They can be detached from the center retainer and slid along the rod to cover different areas of the front window and turned to cover the side windows.

Visor Vanity Mirror

Swing down the sun visors and lift the cover to expose the vanity mirror. Do not drive with the cover lifted due to possible glare impeding other drivers behind or to the side of the vehicle.

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. This vehicle has theft-deterrent features, however, they do not make it impossible to steal.

Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle may have the optional content theft-deterrent alarm system.

To activate the theft-deterrent system:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the power door lock switch or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. If you are using the RKE transmitter, the door does not need to be open.
3. Close all doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Once armed, the alarm will go off if someone tries to enter the vehicle without using the RKE transmitter or a key or turns the ignition on with an incorrect key. The horn will sound and the turn signal lamps will flash for about 30 seconds.

When the alarm is armed, the trunk may be opened with the RKE transmitter. The power door lock switches are disabled and the doors remain locked. You must use your RKE transmitter or your key to unlock the doors when the system is armed.

Arming with the Power Lock Switch

The alarm system will arm when you use either power lock switch to lock the doors while any door is open and the key is removed from the ignition. The alarm system will not arm if the truck is open when you use either power lock switch to lock the doors.

Arming with the RKE Transmitter

The alarm system will arm when you use your RKE transmitter to lock the doors, if the key is not in the ignition.

Disarming with the RKE Transmitter

The alarm system will disarm when you use your RKE transmitter to unlock the doors.

The first time a remote unlock command is received, three flashes will be seen and three horn chirps heard to indicate an alarm condition has occurred since last arming.

Disarming with Your Key

The alarm system will disarm when you use your key to unlock the doors or insert your key in the ignition and turn it from the LOCK/OFF position.

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer

The PASS-Key III+ system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

PASS-Key III+ uses a radio frequency transponder in the key that matches a decoder in the vehicle.

PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation

Your vehicle has PASS-Key® III+ (Personalized Automotive Security System) theft-deterrent system. PASS-Key® III+ is a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system is automatically armed when the key is removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the key is turned to ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY or START from the LOCK/OFF position.

You do not have to manually arm or disarm the system.

The security light will come on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

When the PASS-Key® III+ system senses that someone is using the wrong key, it prevents the vehicle from starting. Anyone using a trial-and-error method to start the vehicle will be discouraged because of the high number of electrical key codes.

If the engine does not start and the security light on the instrument panel cluster comes on when trying to start the vehicle, there may be a problem with your theft-deterrent system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. At this time, you may also want to check the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-97*. If the engine still does not start with the other key, your vehicle needs service. If your vehicle does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer/retailer who can service the PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made. In an emergency, contact Roadside Assistance.

It is possible for the PASS-Key® III+ decoder to learn the transponder value of a new or replacement key. Up to 10 keys may be programmed for the vehicle. The following procedure is for programming additional keys only. If all the currently programmed keys are lost or do not operate, you must see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have keys made and programmed to the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

See your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to get a new key blank that is cut exactly as the ignition key that operates the system.

To program the new additional key:

1. Verify that the new key has a ⊕ stamped on it.
2. Insert the original, already programmed, key in the ignition and start the engine. If the engine will not start, see your dealer/retailer for service.
3. After the engine has started, turn the key to LOCK/OFF, and remove the key.
4. Insert the new key to be programmed and turn it to the ON/RUN position within five seconds of turning the ignition to the LOCK/OFF position in Step 3.

   The security light will turn off once the key has been programmed.
5. Repeat Steps 1 through 4 if additional keys are to be programmed.

If you lose or damage your PASS-Key® III+ key, see your dealer/retailer or a locksmith who can service PASS-Key® III+ to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

New Vehicle Break-In

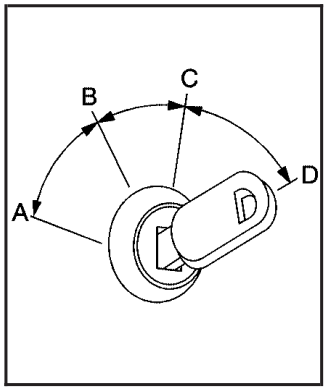
Notice: **The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28* for the trailer towing capabilities of your vehicle and more information.**

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Positions



The ignition switch has four different positions.

To shift out of P (Park), the ignition must be in ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer/retailer.**

A (LOCK/OFF): This position locks the ignition. It also locks the transmission. This is the only position in which the ignition key can be inserted or removed.

The steering can bind with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from left to right while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

B (ACC/ACCESSORY): This is the position in which you can operate the radio and windshield wipers while the engine is off. To use ACC/ACCESSORY, turn the key clockwise.

C (ON/RUN): This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories and to display some instrument panel cluster warning and indicator lights. The switch stays in this position when the engine is running.

If you leave the key in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off, the battery could be drained. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

D (START): This is the position that starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch returns to ON/RUN for driving.

A warning chime will sound and the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display DRIVER'S DOOR AJAR when the driver door is opened, the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF and the key is in the ignition. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows
- Sunroof

The radio will work when the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. Once the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF the radio will continue to work 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened. The power windows will continue to work for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

Starting the Engine

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.**

Starting Procedure

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will slow down as the engine warms. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

   The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ignition key is turned to the START position, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the key is held in START, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine cranking can be stopped by turning the ignition switch to the ACC/ ACCESSORY or LOCK/OFF position.

Notice: **Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by returning the key to the START position immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. If the engine does not start after 5-10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, repeat these steps. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Notice: **The engine is designed to work with the electronics in the vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer/retailer. If you do not, the engine might not perform properly. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Engine Coolant Heater

The engine coolant heater can provide easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up in cold weather conditions at or below 0°F (–18°C). Vehicles with an engine coolant heater should be plugged in at least four hours before starting.

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is attached to the underside of the diagonal brace, which is located above the engine air cleaner/filter assembly.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts, and prevent damage.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer/retailer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

Active Fuel Management™ (5.3L V8 Engine)

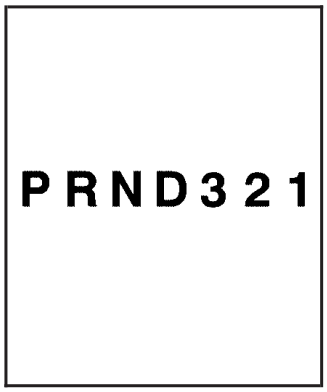
The vehicle's engine may be equipped with Active Fuel Management. This system allows the engine to operate on either all or half of its cylinders, depending on driving conditions.

When less power is required, such as cruising at a constant vehicle speed, the system will operate in the half cylinder mode, allowing the vehicle to achieve better fuel economy. When greater power demands are required, such as accelerating from a stop, passing, or merging onto a freeway, the system will maintain full-cylinder operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Operation

The automatic transmission has a shift lever on the steering column or on the console between the seats.



There is a display, located on the instrument panel cluster that will indicate the gear the vehicle is in.

Maximum engine speed is limited on automatic transmission vehicles while in P (Park) or N (Neutral) to protect driveline components from improper operation.

There are several different positions for the shift lever.

P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when the engine is started because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply the brakes first, then press the shift lever button before you can shift from P (Park) while the ignition is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting Out of Park on page 2-29*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R (Reverse): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.**

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission, see *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-19*.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.**

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator pedal all the way down.

The transmission will shift down to the next gear and the vehicle will have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding, see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 4-11*.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle if you notice that it is moving slowly or not shifting gears as you increase speed may damage the transmission. Have the vehicle serviced right away. You can drive in 2 (Second) when you are driving less than 35 mph (55 km/h) and D (Drive) for higher speeds until then.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3 (Third): This position is also used for normal driving. However, it reduces vehicle speed more than D (Drive) without using the brakes. You might choose 3 (Third) instead of D (Drive) when driving on hilly, winding roads, when towing a trailer, so there is less shifting between gears and when going down a steep hill.

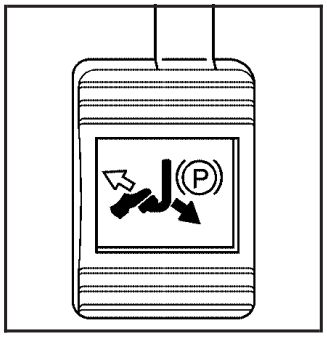
2 (Second): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than 3 (Third) without using the brakes. You can use 2 (Second) on hills. It can help control vehicle speed as you go down steep mountain roads. You would also want to use the brakes off and on.

Notice: **Driving in 2 (Second) for more than 25 miles (40 km) or at speeds over 55 mph (90 km/h) may damage the transmission. Also, shifting into 2 (Second) at speeds above 65 mph (105 km/h) can cause damage. Drive in 3 (Third) or D (Drive) instead of 2 (Second).**

1 (First): This position reduces vehicle speed even more than 2 (Second) without using the brakes. You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is in 1 (First) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission will not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

Parking Brake



The parking brake is located to the left of the brake pedal, near the driver door.

To set the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down, then push down the parking brake pedal.

To release the parking brake, hold the brake pedal down and push the parking brake pedal. When you lift your foot off the parking brake pedal, the pedal will follow it to the released position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A warning chime will sound and a brake warning light located on the instrument panel cluster will come on, if the parking brake is set, the ignition is on and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28*.

Shifting Into Park

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28*.

Steering Column Shift Lever

If the vehicle has a steering column shift lever, use this procedure to shift the vehicle into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by pulling the shift lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. With your foot still holding the brake pedal down, set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-26* for more information.
4. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Console Shift Lever

If the vehicle is equipped with a console shift lever, use this procedure to shift the vehicle into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle and then to the left.
3. While keeping the brake pedal applied, set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-26* for more information.
4. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF.
5. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave the vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, the vehicle is in P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. See *Parking Brake on page 2-26* for more information.

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see “Shifting Into Park” in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If torque lock does occur, your vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

Shifting Out of Park

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock

The vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to:

- Prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in P (Park)
- Prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the regular brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock is always functional except in the case of a an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

Console Shift

If the console shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park):

1. Apply and maintain the regular brakes.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN position. See *Ignition Positions on page 2-20* for more information.
3. Let up on the shift lever and make sure the shift lever is pushed all the way into P (Park).
4. Press the shift lever button
5. Then, move the shift into the desired gear.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service.

Column Shift

If the column shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park):

1. Apply and maintain the regular brakes.
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON/RUN position. See *Ignition Positions on page 2-20* for more information.
3. Shift out of the P (Park) position to the N (Neutral) position.
4. Move the vehicle to a safe location.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Over Things That Burn

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle's exhaust system has been modified, damaged or improperly repaired.
- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or after-market modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-30*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the automatic transmission shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll. Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

Follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-27*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Hold the inside rearview mirror in the center to move it for a clearer view behind your vehicle. Adjust the mirror to avoid glare from the headlamps behind you. Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the mirror for nighttime use. Return the lever to its original position for the day position.

If the vehicle has map lamps, press the buttons located at the bottom of the mirror to turn them on or off.

Vehicles with OnStar® have three additional control buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer/retailer for more information about OnStar® and how to subscribe to it. See *OnStar® System on page 2-33* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

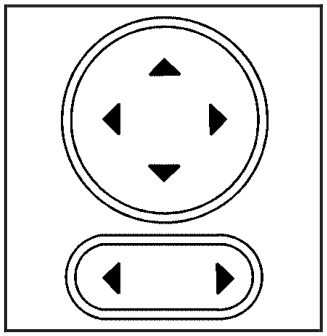
The vehicle may have an automatic dimming rearview mirror with the OnStar® System.

Press the button located below the mirror, on the far left, for up to three seconds to turn the dimming feature off and on.

There are two map lamps located on the bottom of the mirror. Press the button next to each lamp to turn it on and off.

There are also OnStar® buttons located at the bottom of the mirror. See your dealer/retailer for more information about OnStar® and how to subscribe to it. See *OnStar® System on page 2-33* for more information about the service OnStar® provides.

Outside Power Mirrors



Controls for the outside power mirrors are located on the driver door armrest.

1. Press the left or right side of the selector switch located beneath the control pad, to select the driver or passenger mirror.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Press one of the four buttons located on the control pad to move the mirror to the desired direction.
3. Adjust each outside mirror so that a little of the vehicle and the area behind it can be seen.

Keep the selector switch in the center position when not adjusting either outside mirror.

Outside Convex Mirror

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

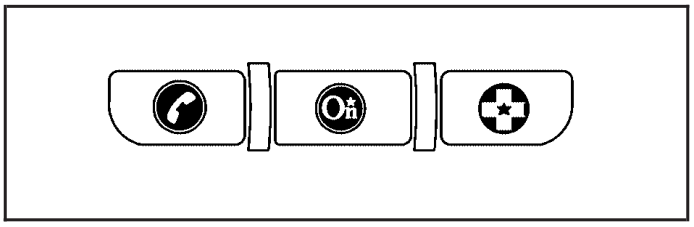
The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Outside Heated Mirrors

For vehicles with heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger): Press to heat the outside rearview mirrors. See "Rear Window Defogger" under *Climate Control System on page 3-20* for more information.

OnStar® System



OnStar uses several innovative technologies and live advisors to provide a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services. If the airbags deploy, the system is designed to make an automatic call to OnStar Emergency advisors who can request emergency services be sent to your location. If the keys are locked in the vehicle, call OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR to have a signal sent to unlock the doors. OnStar Hands-Free Calling, including 30 trial minutes good for 60 days, is available on most vehicles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation service, with one trial route, is available on most vehicles. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor contact Roadside Service.

OnStar service is provided subject to the OnStar Terms and Conditions included in the OnStar Subscriber glove box literature.

Some services such as Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance may not be available until the owner of the vehicle registers with OnStar. After the first prepaid year, contact OnStar to select a monthly or annual subscription payment plan. If a payment plan is not selected, the OnStar system and all services, including airbag notification and emergency services, may be deactivated and no longer available. For more information visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), or press the OnStar button to speak with an advisor.

Not all OnStar services are available on all vehicles. To check if this vehicle is able to provide the services described below, or for a full description of OnStar services and system limitations, see the OnStar Owner's Guide in the glove box or visit onstar.com (U.S.) or onstar.ca (Canada), contact OnStar at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or TTY 1-877-248-2080, or press the OnStar button to speak with an OnStar advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

OnStar Services Available with the Safe & Sound Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Advanced Automatic Crash Notification (AACN) (If equipped)
- Link to Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Location Assistance
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- OnStar Vehicle Diagnostic Email
- GM Goodwrench On Demand Diagnostics
- OnStar Hands-Free Calling with 30 trial minutes
- OnStar Virtual Advisor (U.S. Only)

OnStar Services Included with Directions & Connections Plan

- All Safe and Sound Plan Services
- OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation (If equipped) or Driving Directions - Advisor delivered
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OnStar Hands-Free Calling

OnStar Hands-Free Calling allows eligible OnStar subscribers to make and receive calls using voice commands. Hands-Free Calling is fully integrated into the vehicle, and can be used with OnStar Pre-Paid Minute Packages. Most vehicles include 30 trial minutes good for 60 days. Hands-Free Calling can also be linked to a Verizon Wireless service plan in the U.S. or a Bell Mobility service plan in Canada, depending on eligibility. To find out more, refer to the OnStar Owner's Guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit onstar.com or onstar.ca, or speak with an OnStar advisor by pressing the OnStar button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation

Vehicles with the OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation system can provide voice-guided driving directions. Press the OnStar button to have an OnStar advisor locate a business or address and download driving directions to the vehicle. Voice-guided directions to the desired destination will play through the audio system speakers. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

OnStar Virtual Advisor

OnStar Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling that uses minutes to access location-based weather, local traffic reports, and stock quotes. Press the phone button and give a few simple voice commands to browse through the various topics. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information. This feature is only available in the continental U.S.

OnStar Steering Wheel Controls

This vehicle may have a Talk/Mute button that can be used to interact with OnStar Hands-Free Calling. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-94* for more information.

On some vehicles, the mute button can be used to dial numbers into voice mail systems, or to dial phone extensions. See the OnStar Owner's Guide for more information.

How OnStar Service Works

The OnStar system can record and transmit vehicle information. This information is automatically sent to an OnStar Call Center when the OnStar button is pressed, the emergency button is pressed, or if the airbags or AACN system deploy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This information usually includes the vehicle's GPS location and, in the event of a crash, additional information regarding the crash that the vehicle was involved in (e.g. the direction from which the vehicle was hit). When the Virtual Advisor feature of OnStar Hands-Free Calling is used, the vehicle also sends OnStar the vehicle's GPS location so they can provide services where it is located.

OnStar service cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. OnStar service also cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where the wireless service provider OnStar has hired for that area has coverage, network capacity and reception when the service is needed, and technology that is compatible with the OnStar service. Not all services are available everywhere, particularly in remote or enclosed areas, or at all times.

Location information about the vehicle is only available if the GPS satellite signals are unobstructed and available.

The vehicle must have a working electrical system, including adequate battery power, for the OnStar equipment to operate. There are other problems OnStar cannot control that may prevent OnStar from providing OnStar service at any particular time or place. Some examples are damage to important parts of the vehicle in a crash, hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather or wireless phone network congestion.

Your Responsibility

Increase the volume of the radio if the OnStar advisor cannot be heard. If the light next to the OnStar buttons is red, the system may not be functioning properly. Press the OnStar button and request a vehicle diagnostic. If the light appears clear (no light is appearing), your OnStar subscription has expired and all services have been deactivated. Press the OnStar button to confirm that the OnStar equipment is active.

Universal Home Remote System

The Universal Home Remote System provides a way to replace up to three hand-held Radio-Frequency (RF) transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home lighting.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

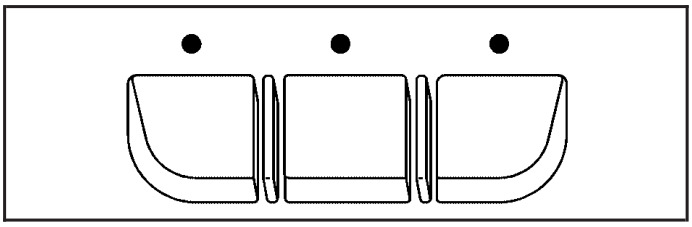
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Universal Home Remote System Operation (With Three Round LED)



This vehicle may have the Universal Home Remote System. If there are three round Light Emitting Diode (LED) indicator lights above the Universal Home Remote buttons, follow the instructions below.

This system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Do not use this system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in programming the transmitter.

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles, as well as, for future programming. Only the original remote control transmitter is needed for Fixed Code programming. The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends. See “Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons” later in this section.

Park the vehicle outside of the garage when programming a garage door. Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate that is being programmed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

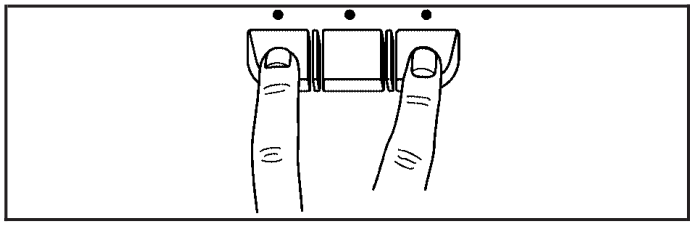
Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

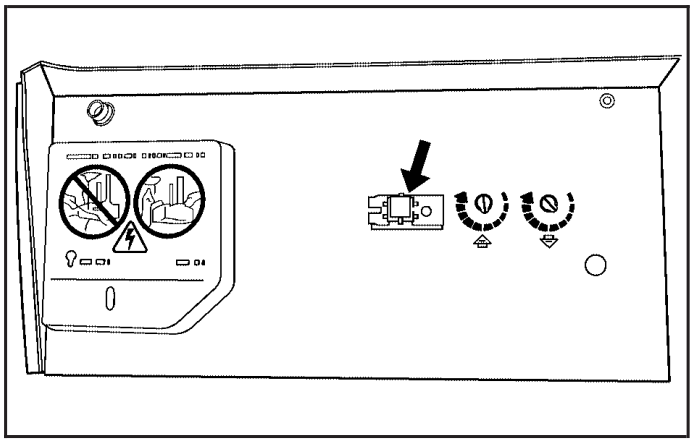
Most garage door openers sold after 1996 are Rolling Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

To program up to three devices:



1. From inside the vehicle, press the two outside buttons at the same time for one to two seconds, and immediately release them.



2. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. It can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit and may be a colored button. Press this button. After pressing this button, complete the following steps in less than 30 seconds.
3. Immediately return to the vehicle. Press and hold the Universal Home Remote button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light, above the selected button, should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 20 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Immediately, within one second, release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
5. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Rolling Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-5, choosing a different function button in Step 3 than what was used for the garage door opener.

If these instructions do not work, the garage door opener is probably a Fixed Code unit. Follow the Programming instructions that follow for a Fixed Code garage door opener.

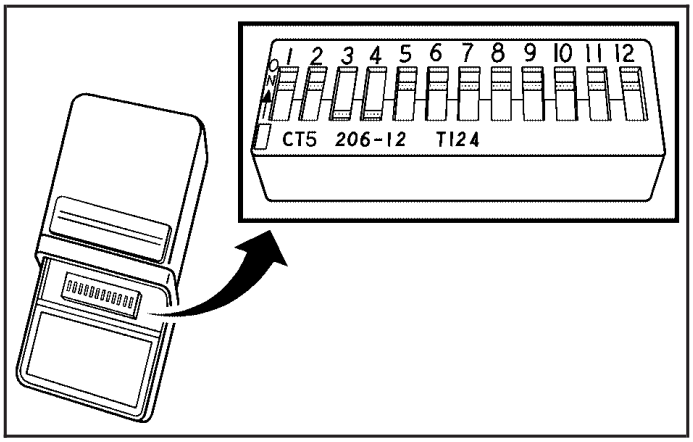
Programming Universal Home Remote — Fixed Code

For questions or help programming the Universal Home Remote System, call 1-866-572-2728 or go to www.learcar2u.com.

Most garage door openers sold before 1996 are Fixed Code units.

Programming a garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions, so read the entire procedure before starting. Otherwise, the device will time out and the procedure will have to be repeated.

To program up to three devices:

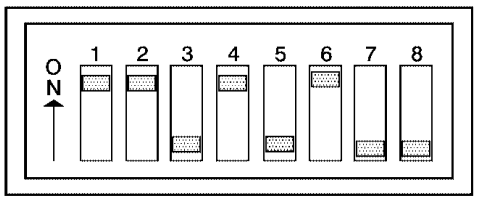


1. To verify that the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit, remove the battery cover on the hand held transmitter supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener motor. If there are a row of dip switches similar to the graphic above, the garage door opener is a Fixed Code unit. If you do not see a row of dip switches, return to the previous section for Programming Universal Home Remote — Rolling Code.

   Your hand held transmitter can have between eight to 12 dip switches depending on the brand of transmitter.

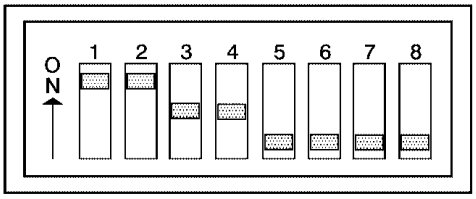
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) could also have a row of dip switches that can be used when programming the Universal Home Remote. If the total number of switches on the motor head and hand held transmitter are different, or if the dip switch settings are different, use the dip switch settings on the motor head unit to program the Universal Home Remote. The motor head dip switch settings can also be used when the original hand held transmitter is not available.



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Off	On	Off	On	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Two Positions



Switch Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Switch Position	On	On	Neutral	Neutral	Off	Off	Off	Off
Your Universal Home Remote Button	Left	Left	Middle	Middle	Right	Right	Right	Right

Example of Eight Dip Switches with Three Positions

The panel of switches might not appear exactly as they do in the examples above, but they should be similar.

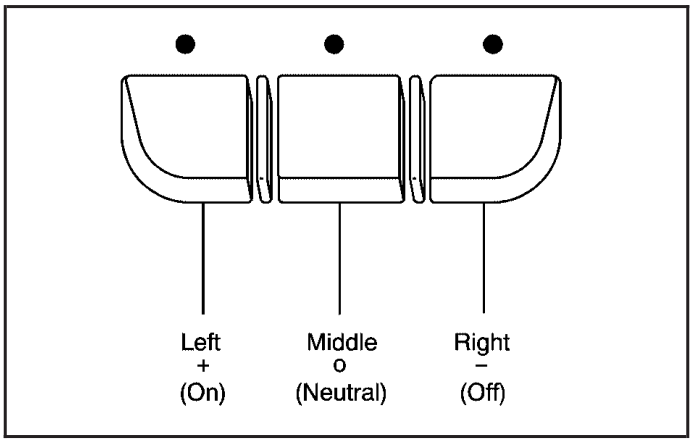
The switch positions on the hand-held transmitter could be labeled, as follows:

- A switch in the up position could be labeled as “Up,” “+,” or “On.”
- A switch in the down position could be labeled as “Down,” “–,” or “Off.”
- A switch in the middle position could be labeled as “Middle,” “0,” or “Neutral.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Write down the eight to 12 switch settings from left to right as follows:
   - When a switch is in the up position, write “Left.”
   - When a switch is in the down position, write “Right.”
   - If a switch is set between the up and down position, write “Middle.”

   The switch settings written down in Step 2 will now become the button strokes to be entered into the Universal Home Remote in Step 4. Be sure to enter the switch settings written down in Step 2, in order from left to right, into the Universal Home Remote, when completing Step 4.
3. From inside your vehicle, first firmly press all three buttons at the same time for about three seconds. Release the buttons to put the Universal Home Remote into programming mode.



4. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Enter each switch setting from Step 2 into your vehicle’s Universal Home Remote. You will have two and one-half minutes to complete Step 4. Now press one button on the Universal Home Remote for each switch setting as follows:
   - If you wrote “Left,” press the left button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Right,” press the right button in the vehicle.
   - If you wrote “Middle,” press the middle button in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. After entering all of the switch positions, again, firmly press and release all three buttons at the same time. The indicator lights will turn on.
6. Press and hold the button that will be used to control the garage door until the garage door moves. The indicator light above the selected button should slowly blink. This button may need to be held for up to 55 seconds.
7. Immediately release the button when the garage door moves. The indicator light will blink rapidly until programming is complete.
8. Press and release the same button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful and complete.

To program another Fixed Code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device, or home automation device, repeat Steps 1-8, choosing a different button in Step 6 than what was used for the garage door opener.

Using Universal Home Remote

Press and hold the appropriate button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Reprogramming Universal Home Remote Buttons

Any of the three buttons can be reprogrammed by repeating the instructions.

Erasing Universal Home Remote Buttons

The programmed buttons should be erased when the vehicle is sold or the lease ends.

To erase either Rolling Code or Fixed Code on the Universal Home Remote device:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons at the same time for approximately 20 seconds, until the indicator lights, located directly above the buttons, begin to blink rapidly.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release both buttons. The codes from all buttons will be erased.

For help or information on the Universal Home Remote System, call the customer assistance phone number under *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage Areas

Glove Box

Lift up on the glove box lever to open it.

Cupholders

Cupholders may be built into the front center console, front portion of the front center seat, and rear armrest of the vehicle.

Sunglasses Storage Compartment

A storage compartment for sunglasses may be located above the rearview mirror. Push on cover to open the compartment.

Center Console Storage

For vehicles with a front center console storage area, open it by pulling up on the latch located in the front of the console lid.

Rear Storage Area

For vehicles with a split folding rear seat, there are two storage areas underneath. Pull the tab(s) located by the passenger side safety belt buckle and the driver side rear seat to access the storage areas. See *Split Folding Rear Seat on page 1-10* for more information.

Rear Seat Armrest

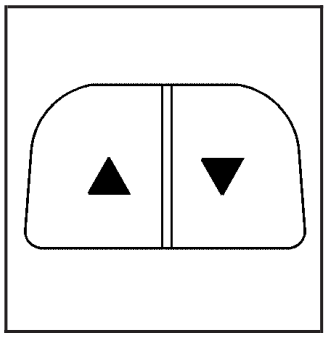
For vehicles with a rear seat armrest, pull the tab on the armrest forward to access it.

Convenience Net

Use the convenience net, located in the rear, to store small loads as far forward as possible. The net should not be used to store heavy loads.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sunroof



On vehicles with a sunroof, the sunroof switches are located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be operated when the ignition is in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-21*.

▲ **(Vent/Express-Open):** Press this switch once to vent the sunroof when it is closed. When using the vent, the sunshade should be fully opened. The sunshade can be opened or closed manually by sliding it rearward or forward.

From the vent position, press this switch again to activate the express-open feature. Press the close switch to stop movement of the sunroof. The sunshade will automatically open when using express-open.

A deflector will automatically pop up when the sunroof is opened. The deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

▼ **(Close):** Press and hold this switch until the sunroof motor stops to close the sunroof, or release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
- Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
- Horn 3-6
- Tilt Wheel 3-6
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-7
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 3-8
- Flash-to-Pass 3-8
- Windshield Wipers 3-8
- Windshield Washer 3-9
- Cruise Control 3-9
- Exterior Lamps 3-12
- Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)/Automatic Headlamp System 3-14
- Fog Lamps 3-14
- Instrument Panel Brightness 3-15
- Courtesy Lamps 3-15
- Dome Lamp 3-15
- Entry Lighting 3-15
- Delayed Entry Lighting 3-16
- Delayed Exit Lighting 3-16
- Parade Dimming 3-16
- Reading Lamps 3-17
- Mirror Reading Lamps 3-17
- Electric Power Management 3-17
- Battery Run-Down Protection 3-18
- Accessory Power Outlet(s) 3-18
- Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter 3-19

Climate Controls 3-20
- Climate Control System 3-20
- Outlet Adjustment 3-23
- Passenger Compartment Air Filter 3-23

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-24
- Instrument Panel Cluster 3-25
- Speedometer and Odometer 3-26
- Tachometer 3-26
- Safety Belt Reminders 3-27
- Airbag Readiness Light 3-28
- Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-29
- Charging System Light 3-30
- Brake System Warning Light 3-30
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 3-31
- Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light 3-32
- Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light 3-33
- Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-34
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 3-34
- Tire Pressure Light 3-35
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-36

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Oil Pressure Light 3-39
Security Light 3-39
Fog Lamp Light 3-40
Cruise Control Light 3-40
Highbeam On Light 3-40
Fuel Gage 3-41

Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-42
DIC Operation and Displays 3-42
DIC Compass 3-47
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-49
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-57

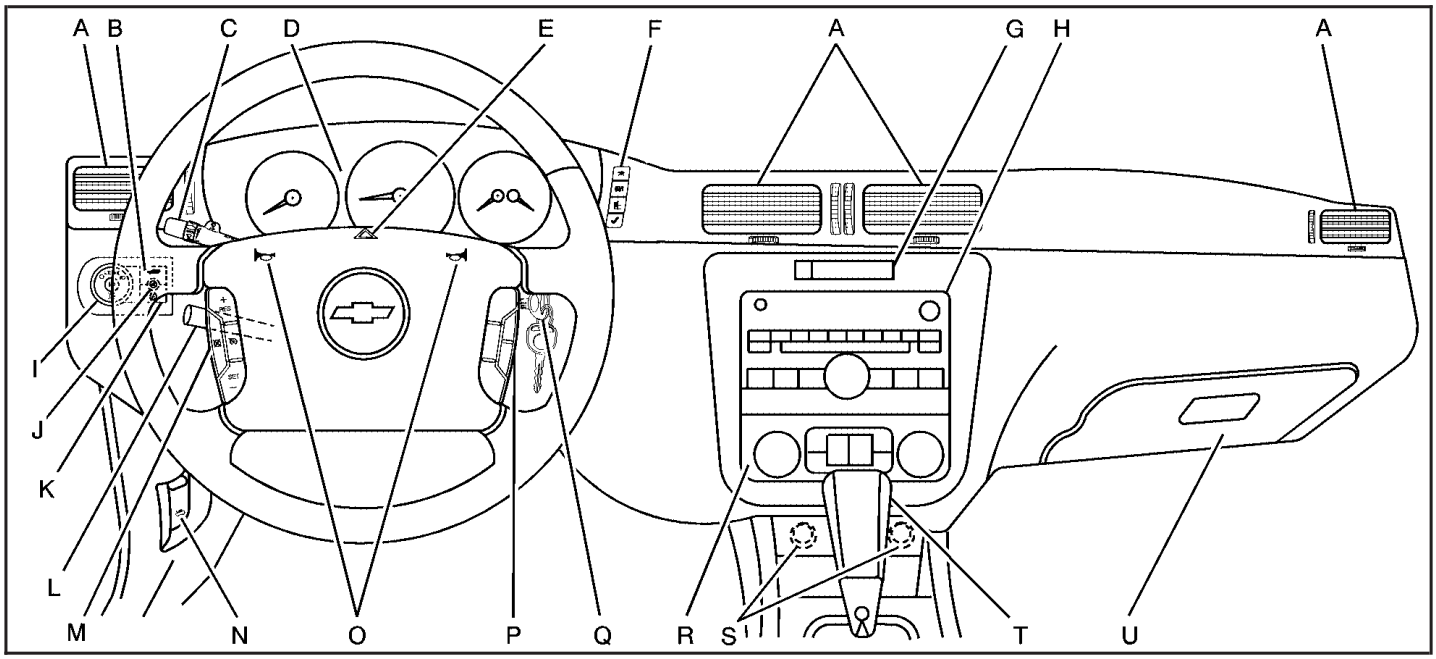
Audio System(s) 3-63
Setting the Clock 3-64
Radio(s) 3-66
Using an MP3 3-77
XM Radio Messages 3-81
Bluetooth® 3-82
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-93
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-94
Radio Reception 3-95
Backglass Antenna 3-96
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-96

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Overview



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The main components of the instrument panel are listed here:

A. *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-23*.
B. Remote Trunk Release Button. See *Trunk on page 2-12*.
C. *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.
D. *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-25*.
E. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.
F. *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-42*.
G. *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-29*.
H. *Audio System(s) on page 3-63*.
I. *Exterior Lamps on page 3-12*.
J. *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-15*.
K. *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* (If Equipped).
L. *Tilt Wheel on page 3-6*.
M. *Cruise Control on page 3-9*.
N. *Hood Release on page 5-13*.
O. *Horn on page 3-6*.
P. *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-94* (If Equipped).
Q. *Ignition Positions on page 2-20*.
R. *Climate Control System on page 3-20*.
S. *Accessory Power Outlet(s) on page 3-18*.
T. Center Console Shift Lever (If Equipped). See *Shifting Into Park on page 2-27*.
U. *Glove Box on page 2-43*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hazard Warning Flashers

The hazard warning flashers let you warn others that you have a problem.

The hazard warning flasher button is located on top of the steering column.

⚠ : Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, the turn signals will not work.

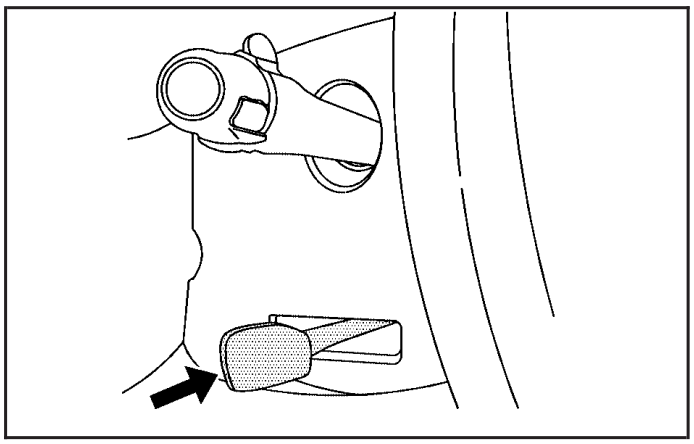
Horn

Press near or on the horn symbols on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Tilt Wheel

A tilt wheel allows the steering wheel to be adjusted before driving. The steering wheel can be raised to the highest level for more room when entering and exiting the vehicle.

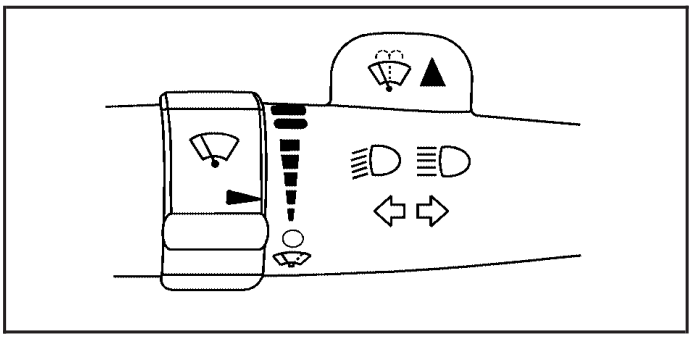
The tilt wheel lever is located on the left side of the steering column.



To tilt the wheel, hold the wheel and pull the lever. Then move the wheel to a comfortable position and release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

⇦⇨ : Turn and Lane Change Signals

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: Windshield Wipers

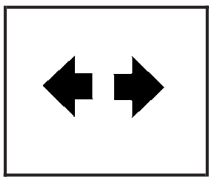
▲ : Windshield Washer

Flash-to-Pass.

For information on the headlamps, see *Exterior Lamps on page 3-12*.

Information for these features is on the pages following.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

The lever returns to its starting position whenever it is released.

If after signaling a turn or lane change the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb might be burned out.

Have the bulbs replaced. If the bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-97*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signal On Chime

If either one of the turn signals are left on and the vehicle has been driven more than 3/4 mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

To change the headlamps from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal/multifunction lever away from you.

This instrument panel cluster light comes on if the high beam lamps are turned on while the ignition is in ON/RUN.

To change the headlamps from high beam to low beam, pull the turn signal lever toward you.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature is used to signal to the vehicle ahead that you want to pass.

If the headlamps are off or in the low-beam position, pull the turn signal lever toward you to momentarily switch to high-beams.

Release the lever to turn the high-beam headlamps off.

Windshield Wipers

Turn the band with the wiper symbol to control the windshield wipers.

(Mist): Turn to mist for a single wiping cycle. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers stop after one wipe. Hold the band on mist longer, for more wipe cycles.

(Off): Turns the wipers off.

(Delay): Turn the band to adjust the delay time. The delay between wiping cycles becomes shorter as the band is moved to the top of the lever. This can be very useful in light rain or snow.

(Low Speed): For steady wiping at low speed.

(High Speed): For high-speed wiping.

Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they are frozen to the windshield, gently loosen or thaw them. Damaged wiper blades may not clear the windshield well, making it harder to see and drive safely. If the blades do become damaged, install new blades or blade inserts. For more information, see *Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-51*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor. A circuit breaker will stop the motor until it cools down. Clear away snow or ice to prevent an overload.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Washer

At the top of the multifunction lever, there is a paddle with the windshield washer symbol on it. Push the paddle to spray washer fluid on the windshield. The wipers run for several sweeps and then either stop or return to the preset speed. The ignition key must be in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN for this to work. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35*.

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

When the vehicle is low on washer fluid, the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) for 60 seconds. When the ignition is turned off, this message displays again for three seconds to remind you that the fluid level is low.

Until the fluid reservoir is refilled, every time the vehicle is started, the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) for 60 seconds. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*.

Cruise Control

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

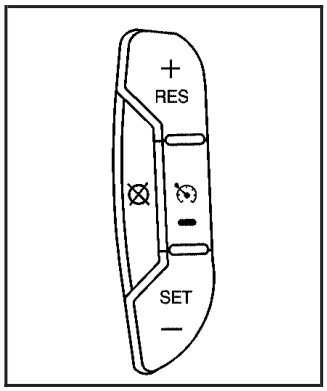
⚠ CAUTION:

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS) and the cruise control is on, TCS will begin to limit wheel spin and the cruise control automatically turns off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, the cruise control can be turned back on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The cruise control buttons are located on left side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn cruise control on and off. The indicator is lit when cruise control is on.

+ RES (Resume/Accelerate): Press to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

SET– : Press to set the speed or make the vehicle decelerate.

(Cancel): Press to cancel cruise control.

Setting Cruise Control

Cruise control will not work if the parking brake is set, or if the master cylinder brake fluid level is low.

The cruise control light on the instrument panel cluster comes on after the cruise control has been set to the desired speed. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-25*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Press the button.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release the SET– button located on the steering wheel.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resuming a Set Speed

If cruise control is set at a desired speed and the brakes are applied, this shuts off the cruise control. However, it does not need to be reset.

Once your vehicle reaches a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, press the +RES button on the steering wheel. The vehicle goes back to the previously selected speed and stays there.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To increase the cruise speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the +RES button on the steering wheel until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press the +RES button. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

To reduce your speed while using cruise control:

- Press and hold the SET– button on the steering wheel until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, press the SET– button on the steering wheel briefly. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the cruise speed you set earlier.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. If the brakes are applied the cruise control will turn off.

Ending Cruise Control

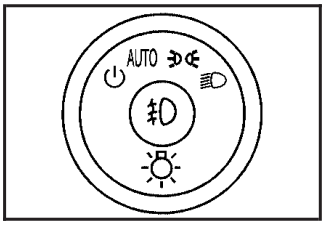
There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press the ⊗ button on the steering wheel.
- Press the button on the steering wheel.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed memory is erased by turning off the cruise control or the ignition.

Exterior Lamps



The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

It controls the following systems:

- Headlamps
- Taillamps
- Parking Lamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Fog Lamps (If Equipped)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The exterior lamps control has four positions:

(Off): Turns off the automatic headlamps and daytime running lamps (DRL). Turning the headlamp control to the off position again will turn the automatic headlamps or DRL back on. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the off position only works when the vehicle is shifted into the P (Park) position.

AUTO (Automatic): Automatically turns on the headlamps at normal brightness, together with the following:

- Parking Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

(Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps together with the following:

- Instrument Panel Lights
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the following lamps listed below. When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is on, the headlamps will turn off automatically 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off. When the headlamps are turned on while the vehicle is off, the headlamps will stay on for 10 minutes before automatically turning off to prevent the battery from being drained. Turn the headlamp control to off and then back to the headlamp on position to make the headlamps stay on for an additional 10 minutes.

- Parking Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Fog Lamps) (If Equipped): Turns on the fog lamps.

See *Fog Lamps on page 3-14*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)/ Automatic Headlamp System

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system makes the low-beam headlamps come on at a reduced brightness when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
- The exterior lamps control is in AUTO.
- The engine is running.

When the DRL are on, the regular headlamps, taillamps, sidemarker, and other lamps are not on. The instrument panel and cluster are also not on.

The headlamps automatically change from DRL to the regular headlamps depending on the darkness of the surroundings. The other lamps that come on with the headlamps will also come on.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps go off and the DRL come on.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Do not cover the light sensor on top of the instrument panel because it works with the DRL.

Fog Lamps

(Fog Lamps): For vehicles with fog lamps, the button is located on the exterior lamps control. The exterior lamps control is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.

The ignition must be in the ON/RUN position for the fog lamps to come on.

Press to turn the fog lamps on or off. A light will come on in the instrument panel cluster.

When the headlamps are changed to high-beam, the fog lamps also go off.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Brightness

(Instrument Panel Brightness): The knob with this symbol on it is located next to the exterior lamps control to the left of the steering wheel. Push the knob in all the way until it extends out and then turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to brighten or dim the lights. Push the knob back in when finished.

Courtesy Lamps

When a door is opened, the courtesy lamps automatically come on. They make it easy for you to enter and leave your vehicle. You can also manually turn these lamps on by fully turning the instrument panel brightness control clockwise.

The reading lamps, located on the rearview mirror, can be turned on or off independent of the automatic courtesy lamps, when the doors are closed.

Dome Lamp

The dome lamp comes on when a door is opened. This lamp can also be turned on by turning the instrument panel brightness control clockwise.

Entry Lighting

For vehicles with courtesy lamps, they come on and stay on for a set time whenever the unlock symbol is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, if the vehicle has one.

If a door is opened, the lamps stay on while it is open and then turn off automatically about 20 seconds after the door is closed. If the unlock symbol is pressed and no door is opened, the lamps turn off after about 20 seconds.

Entry lighting includes a feature called theater dimming. With theater dimming, the lamps do not turn off at the end of the delay time. Instead, they slowly dim and then go out. The delay time is canceled if the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN or the power door lock switch is pressed. The lamps will dim right away.

When the ignition is on, illuminated entry is inactive, which means the courtesy lamps will not come on unless a door is opened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Delayed Entry Lighting

Delayed entry lighting illuminates the interior for a period of time after all the doors have been closed.

The ignition must be off for delayed entry lighting to work. Immediately after all the doors have been closed, the delayed entry lighting feature continues to work until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is in ON/RUN.
- The doors are locked.
- An illumination period of about 25 seconds has elapsed.

If during the illumination period a door is opened, the timed illumination period is canceled and the interior lamps remain on.

Delayed Exit Lighting

This feature illuminates the interior for a period of time after the key is removed from the ignition.

The ignition must be off for delayed exit lighting to work. When the key is removed, interior illumination activates and remains on until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is in ON/RUN.
- The power door locks are activated.
- An illumination period of 20 seconds has elapsed.

If during the illumination period a door is opened, the timed illumination period will be canceled and the interior lamps will remain on because a door is open.

Parade Dimming

Parade mode automatically prohibits the dimming of the instrument panel displays during the daylight while the headlamps are on so that the displays are still able to be seen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reading Lamps

The vehicle has reading lamps that also act as the dome lamp. Press the button to turn them on and off.

Mirror Reading Lamps

The vehicle has reading lamps on the rearview mirror. Push the button to turn the reading lamps on and off.

Electric Power Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gage or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message might be displayed, such as BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE, BATTERY VOLTAGE LOW, or LOW BATTERY. If this message is displayed, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature helps prevent the battery from being drained, if the interior courtesy lamps, reading/map lamps, visor vanity lamps or trunk lamp are accidentally left on. If any of these lamps are left on, they automatically turn off after 10 minutes, if the ignition is off. The lamps will not come back on again until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is turned on.
- The exterior lamps control is turned off, then on again.

The headlamps will time-out after 10 minutes, if they are manually turned on with the ignition on or off.

Accessory Power Outlet(s)

The vehicle has three 12-volt outlets which can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cellular telephone.

On vehicles with a center console, one outlet is located inside the center floor console and two outlets are located at the front of the console bin under the instrument panel. Lift the cover to access the outlet. Close the cover when not using the outlet.

On vehicles without a center console, two are located under the climate controls and another outlet for the rear seat passengers is at the rear of the center front seat. Remove the cover to access the outlets. When not using the outlet, make sure the cover is closed.

Notice: **Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Power is always supplied to the outlets. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Certain accessory plugs may not be compatible to the accessory power outlet and could result in blown vehicle and adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer/retailer for additional information on the power accessory plugs.

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to the vehicle can damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not use equipment exceeding maximum amperage rating of 20 amperes. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment.**

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding electrical equipment, and never use anything that exceeds the maximum amperage rating of 20 amps.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Ashtray(s) and Cigarette Lighter

The vehicle may have an ashtray and a cigarette lighter. The ashtray and cigarette lighter may be located in the console, if the vehicle has one, otherwise, they may be located in the center armrest of the front seat.

Notice: **If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.**

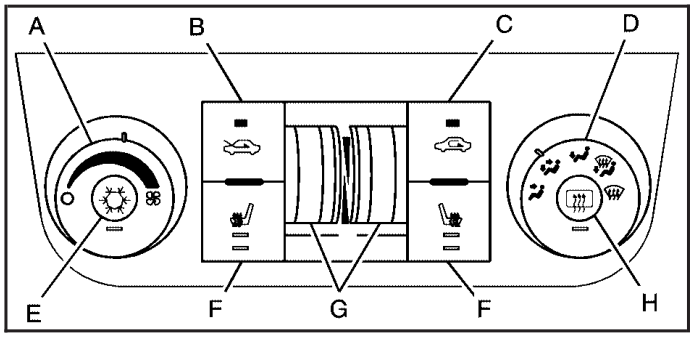
To use the lighter, just push it in all the way and let go. When it is ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Controls

Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, defrost, defog and ventilation can be controlled with this system. For vehicles with heated seats, see *Heated Seats on page 1-6*.



A. Fan Control
B. Outside Air
C. Recirculation
D. Air Delivery Mode Control
E. Air Conditioning
F. Heated Seats
G. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
H. Rear Window Defogger

Temperature Control: Turn the thumbwheels up or down to increase or decrease the temperature on the driver's side or the passenger side of the vehicle.

(Fan Control): Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. Positioning the knob between two modes, can select a combination of those modes.

If the airflow seems low when the fan is at the highest setting, the passenger compartment air filter may need to be replaced. There will be some airflow noticeable from the various outlets when driving, even with the fan in the off position. For more information, see *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-23* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

Air Delivery Mode Control: Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to change the direction of the airflow inside the vehicle.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some of the air directed to the windshield and side window outlets. In this mode, the system automatically selects outside air.

(Defog): This mode clears the windshield of fog or moisture. Air is directed equally to the windshield and the floor outlets. When defog is selected, the system turns off recirculation and runs the air conditioning compressor unless the outside temperature is below 40°F (4°C).

(Defrost): This mode clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield with some air to the side window vents and the floor vents. When defrost is selected, the system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle. The air conditioning compressor will run automatically in this setting, unless the outside temperature is below 40°F (4°C).

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that it is on. The air conditioning can be selected in any mode as long as the fan is on and the outside temperature is above freezing. A flashing indicator light indicates that the air conditioning compressor is currently not available.

On hot days, open the windows to let hot inside air escape; then close them. This helps to reduce the time it takes for the vehicle to cool down. It also helps the system to operate more efficiently.

For quick cool down on hot days, do the following:

1. Select the mode.
2. Press the button.
3. Select the coolest temperature for both zones.
4. Select the highest speed.
5. When the coolest temperature is selected in the A/C mode, the system automatically goes into the recirculation mode to improve cooling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using these settings together for long periods of time may cause the air inside the vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this from happening, after the air inside the vehicle has cooled, turn the recirculation mode off.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water may drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

(Outside Air): Press to turn on outside air. An indicator light comes on to show that it is on. Outside air will circulate throughout the vehicle.

(Recirculation): Press to turn on the recirculation mode. An indicator light comes on to show that it is on.

This mode helps to quickly heat or cool the air inside the vehicle once the temperature inside the vehicle is equal to or better than the outside temperature. It can be used to prevent outside air and odors from entering the vehicle. The recirculation mode is not available in outside air, floor, defog or defrost modes. If the button is selected while in these modes, the indicator flashes three times.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear Window Defogger): The rear window defogger turns off automatically after it has been activated for 10 minutes. It can be turned off manually, by pressing the button again or by turning the ignition to the LOCK/OFF position. The rear window defogger can be turned on again for additional window clearing. The length of defogger operation will increase if the vehicle is being driven.

For vehicles with heated outside rearview mirrors, the mirrors heat to help clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror when the rear window defog button is pressed. See *Outside Power Mirrors on page 2-32*.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

Notice: **Do not use anything sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the warming grid, and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Outlet Adjustment

Use the thumbwheel located below or to the side of the outlet, to change the direction of the air flow.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow or leaves from the air inlets at the base of the windshield that may block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors may adversely affect the performance of the system.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- If the airflow seems low when the fan is at the highest setting, the passenger compartment air filter, if equipped, may need to replaced. For more information, see *Passenger Compartment Air Filter on page 3-23* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.
- If fogging reoccurs while in vent or bi-level modes with mild temperature throughout the vehicle, turn on the air conditioner to reduce windshield fogging.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

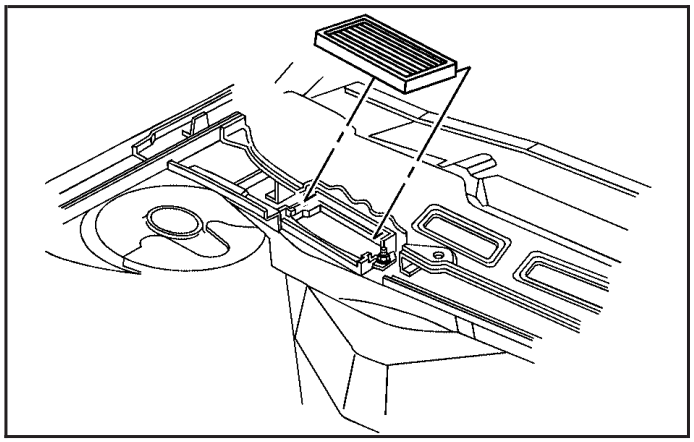
The vehicle has a passenger compartment particulate air filter. It is located in the engine compartment, below the air inlet grille on the passenger side.

The filter traps most of the pollen from air entering the climate control system. It needs to be changed periodically to ensure system performance. For information on how often to change the passenger compartment air filter, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

To change the passenger compartment air filter:

1. Turn off the ignition when the windshield wipers are in the up position.
2. Raise the vehicle hood.
3. Pull back the hood weatherstrip from the passengers side of the vehicle halfway to center.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Remove the air inlet grille retainers.
5. Lift the air inlet grille and disconnect the washer hose at the quick-connect.
6. Remove the air inlet grille.
7. Remove the water deflector plate.
8. Remove the old passenger compartment air filter.
9. Reverse the steps to install the new air filter.

For best climate control system performance, reinstall the air filter.

For the type of filter to use, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*.

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gages could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

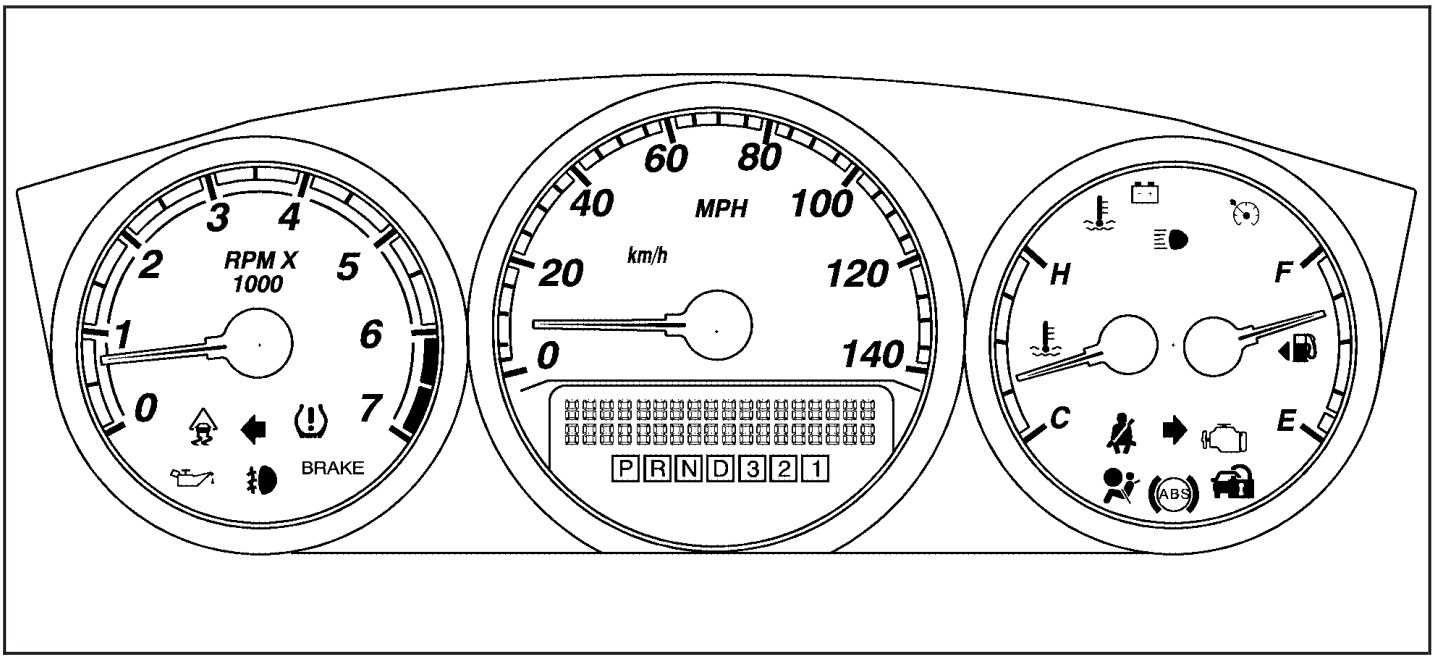
Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of the vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Cluster

The instrument panel cluster is designed to show how the vehicle is running. It shows how fast the vehicle is going, about how much fuel has been used and many other things needed to drive safely and economically.



United States Uplevel shown, Base and Canada similar

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Speedometer and Odometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in either miles (used in the United States) or in kilometers (used in Canada).

This vehicle has a tamper-resistant odometer. If the odometer displays ERROR, it probably has been tampered with and the numbers might not be accurate.

If the vehicle needs a new odometer installed, it must be set to the mileage total of the old odometer. If that is not possible, then it will be set at zero and a label must be put on the driver's door to show the old mileage reading of the vehicle when the new odometer was installed.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Notice: **If the engine is operated with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, the vehicle could be damaged, and the damages would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Reminders

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt, unless the driver safety belt is already buckled.

The safety belt light comes on and stays on for several seconds, then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

Several seconds after the engine is started, a chime sounds for several seconds to remind the front passenger to buckle their safety belt. This only occurs if the passenger airbag is enabled. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for more information. The passenger safety belt light, located on the instrument panel, comes on and stays on for several seconds and then flashes for several more.

This chime and light are repeated if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbag Readiness Light

The system checks the airbag's electrical system for possible malfunctions. If the light stays on it indicates there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-57*.

The airbag readiness light flashes for a few seconds when the engine is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ CAUTION:

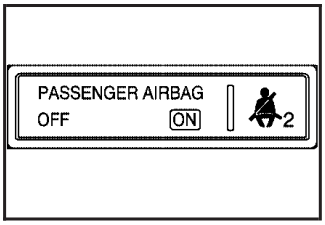
If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, an airbag Driver Information Center (DIC) message can also come on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

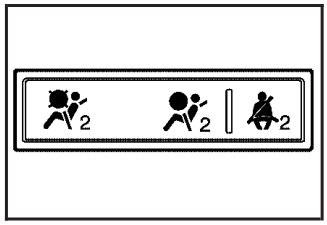
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-65* for important safety information. The instrument panel has a passenger airbag status indicator.



United States



Canada

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. If you are using remote start to start the vehicle from a distance, if equipped, you may not see the system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger frontal airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag.

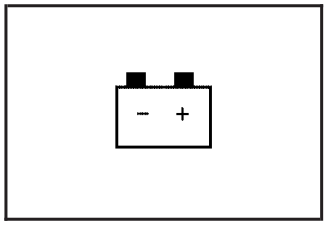
If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer/retailer for service.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for more information, including important safety information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Charging System Light



This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

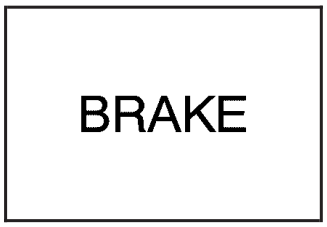
If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. A charging system message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) can also appear. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

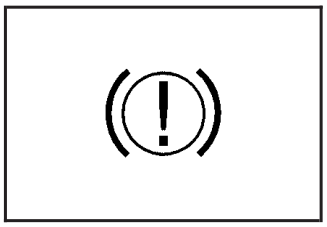
Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part is not working, the other part can still work and stop the vehicle. For good braking both parts need to be working well.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

This light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

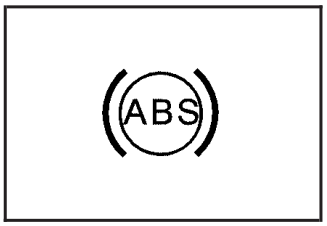
When the ignition is on, the brake system warning light also comes on when the parking brake is set. The light stays on if the parking brake does not fully release. If it stays on after the parking brake is fully released, it means the vehicle has a brake problem.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The pedal might be harder to push, or the pedal can go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-26*.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



For vehicles with the Antilock Brake System (ABS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

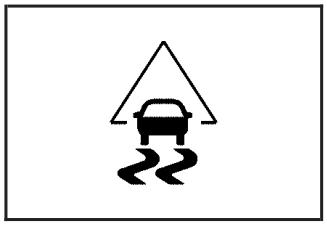
If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-30*.

For vehicles with a Driver Information Center (DIC), see *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for all brake related DIC messages.

Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light



For vehicles with a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak® warning light, this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

When the system is active, the light flashes while the system is limiting wheel spin or assisting with controlling the vehicle.

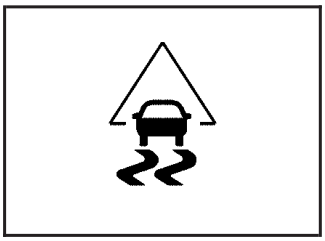
If it stays on or comes on while driving a SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL message appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC). This indicates that there could be a problem with the traction control system and the vehicle may need service. When this warning light is on and the SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL message appears on the DIC, the system does not limit wheel spin.

If the traction control system is manually turned off, this light comes on and the TRACTION CONTROL OFF message appears on the DIC.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light



This light comes on briefly while the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light will then go off.

This light can come on after the vehicle is first driven and the STABILITRAK NOT READY message appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* for more information.

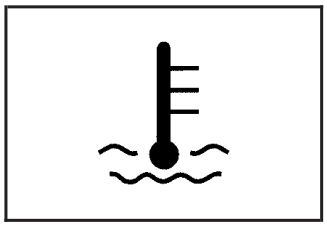
If the light stays on, or comes on while driving a SERVICE STABILITRAK message appears in the DIC. This indicates that there may be a problem with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system and the vehicle may need service. When this warning light is on and the SERVICE STABILITRAK message appears on the DIC, the ESC system does not assist in controlling the vehicle.

When the system is active, the light flashes while the system is assisting in controlling the vehicle.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

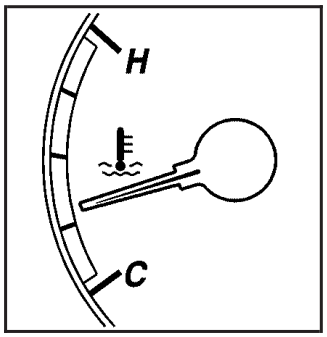
If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

Notice: **Driving with the engine coolant temperature warning light on could cause the vehicle to overheat. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31*. The vehicle's engine could be damaged, and it might not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive with the engine coolant temperature warning light on.**

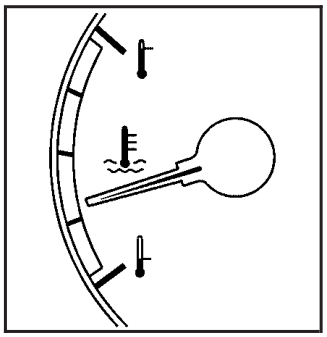
The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31* for more information.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



United States



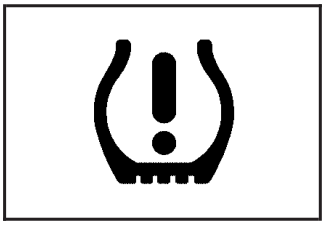
Canada

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature. If the gage pointer moves toward the "H" (United States) or toward the shaded thermostat (Canada), it means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Light



For vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system, this light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

It provides information about tire pressures and the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

When the Light is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires is significantly underinflated.

A tire pressure message in the Driver Information Center (DIC), can accompany the light. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information. Stop and check the tires as soon as it is safe to do so. If a tire is underinflated, inflate to the proper pressure. See *Tires on page 5-53* for more information.

When the Light Flashes First and Then is On Steady

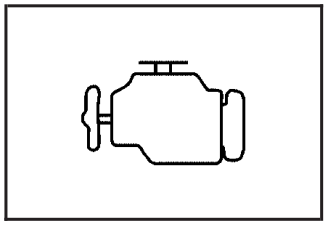
This indicates that there could be a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System. The light flashes for about a minute and stays on steady for the remainder of the ignition cycle. This sequence repeats with every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-62* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems. It ensures that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment.



This light should come on when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

If the check engine light comes on and stays on, while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, after a while, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle's fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park the vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

An emission system malfunction might be corrected by doing the following:

- Make sure the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-10*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- If the vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle of water, the vehicle's electrical system might be wet. The condition is usually corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.
- Make sure to fuel the vehicle with quality fuel. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and can cause: stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

  If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

  See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer/retailer can check the vehicle. The dealer/retailer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

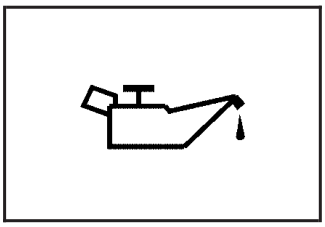
Some state/provincial and local governments have or might begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on the vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things to know to help the vehicle pass an inspection:

- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on with the engine running, or if the key is in ON/RUN and the light is not on.
- The vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD II (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if the battery has recently been replaced or if the battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer/retailer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Oil Pressure Light



⚠ CAUTION:

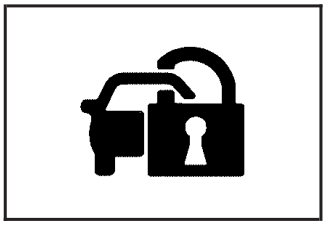
Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. The engine can become so hot that it catches fire. Someone could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and it might have some other system problem.

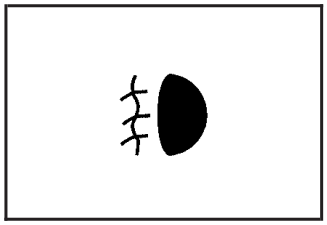
Security Light



For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

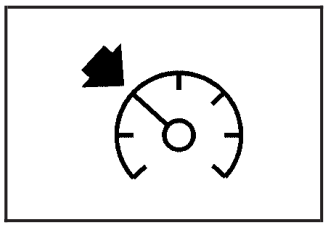
Fog Lamp Light



The fog lamp light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps on page 3-14* for more information.

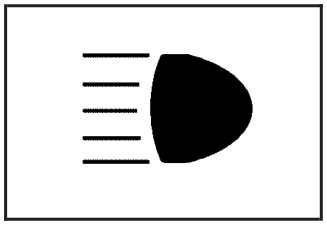
Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 3-9* for more information.

Highbeam On Light

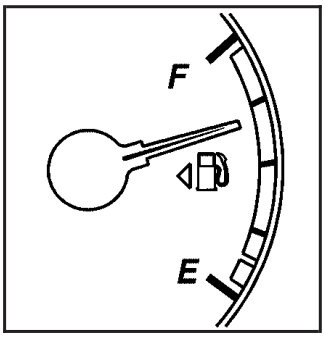


This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

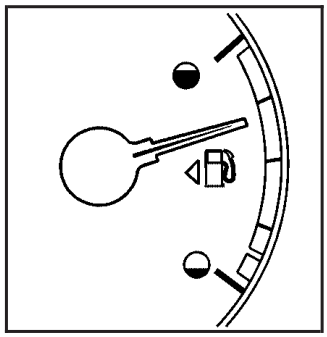
See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

When the ignition is on, the fuel gage indicates about how much fuel is left in the fuel tank.

An arrow on the fuel gage indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gage:

- At the gas station, the gas pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the fuel tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage moves a little when while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gage does not go back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver Information Center (DIC)

Your vehicle has a Driver Information Center (DIC).

All messages will appear in the DIC display located below the speedometer in the instrument panel cluster. The DIC buttons are located on the instrument panel, to the right of the instrument panel cluster.

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

The DIC displays trip, fuel, and vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected. The bottom line of the DIC shows the shift lever position indicator. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-24* for more information.

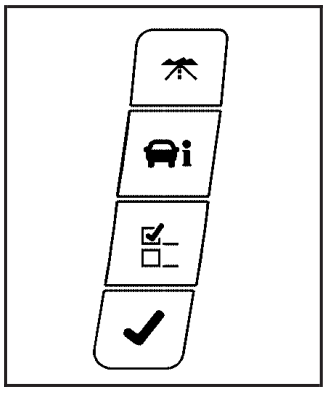
If your vehicle has these features, the DIC also displays the compass direction and the outside air temperature when viewing the trip and fuel information. The compass direction appears on the top right corner of the DIC display. The outside air temperature automatically appears in the bottom right corner of the DIC display. If there is a problem with the system that controls the temperature display, the numbers will be replaced with dashes. If this occurs, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer.

The DIC also allows some features to be customized. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57* for more information.

DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC has different displays which can be accessed by pressing the DIC buttons located on the instrument panel, to the right of the instrument panel cluster.

DIC Buttons



The buttons are the trip/fuel, vehicle information, customization, and set/reset buttons. The button functions are detailed in the following pages.

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometers, fuel range, average economy, instantaneous economy, Active Fuel Management™ indicator on vehicles with this feature, and average speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to display the oil life, units, tire pressure readings, compass zone and compass calibration on vehicles with this feature, and Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter programming.

(Customization): Press this button to customize the feature settings on your vehicle. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-57* for more information.

(Set/Reset): Press this button to set or reset certain functions and to turn off or acknowledge messages on the DIC.

Trip/Fuel Menu Items

(Trip/Fuel): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Odometer

Press the trip/fuel button until ODOMETER displays. This display shows the distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km).

Trip A and Trip B

Press the trip/fuel button until TRIP A or TRIP B displays. This display shows the current distance traveled in either miles (mi) or kilometers (km) since the last reset for each trip odometer. Both trip odometers can be used at the same time.

Each trip odometer can be reset to zero separately by pressing the set/reset button while the desired trip odometer is displayed.

The trip odometer has a feature called the retro-active reset. This can be used to set the trip odometer to the number of miles (kilometers) driven since the ignition was last turned on. This can be used if the trip odometer is not reset at the beginning of the trip.

To use the retro-active reset feature, press and hold the set/reset button for at least four seconds. The trip odometer will display the number of miles (mi) or kilometers (km) driven since the ignition was last turned on and the vehicle was moving. Once the vehicle begins moving, the trip odometer will accumulate mileage. For example, if the vehicle was driven 5 miles (8 km) before it is started again, and then the retro-active reset feature is activated, the display will show 5 miles (8 km). As the vehicle begins moving, the display will then increase to 5.1 miles (8.2 km), 5.2 miles (8.4 km), etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the retro-active reset feature is activated after the vehicle is started, but before it begins moving, the display will show the number of miles (mi) or kilometers (km) that were driven during the last ignition cycle.

Fuel Range

Press the trip/fuel button until FUEL RANGE displays. This display shows the approximate number of remaining miles (mi) or kilometers (km) the vehicle can be driven without refueling.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This estimate will change if driving conditions change. For example, if driving in traffic and making frequent stops, this display may read one number, but if the vehicle is driven on a freeway, the number may change even though the same amount of fuel is in the fuel tank. This is because different driving conditions produce different fuel economies. Generally, freeway driving produces better fuel economy than city driving.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, the FUEL LEVEL LOW message displays. See "FUEL LEVEL LOW" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

Average Economy

Press the trip/fuel button until AVG ECONOMY displays. This display shows the approximate average miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of mpg (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. To reset this display to zero, press and hold the set/reset button.

Instantaneous Economy and Active Fuel Management™ Indicator

Press the trip/fuel button until INST ECONOMY displays. If your vehicle has the Active Fuel Management™ feature, INST ECONOMY 8CYL MODE will display on vehicles with a V8 engine. This display shows the current fuel economy at a particular moment and will change frequently as driving conditions change. This display shows the instantaneous fuel economy in miles per gallon (mpg) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). Unlike average economy, this screen cannot be reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If your vehicle has the Active Fuel Management™ feature, an Active Fuel Management™ indicator will display on the right side of the DIC, while INST ECONOMY displays on the left side. Active Fuel Management™ allows the engine to operate on either all or half of its cylinders, depending on your driving demands.

For vehicles with a V8 engine, when Active Fuel Management™ is active, 4CYL MODE will display. When Active Fuel Management™ is inactive, 8CYL MODE will display.

See *Active Fuel Management™ (5.3L V8 Engine) on page 2-23* for more information.

Average Speed

Press the trip/fuel button until AVERAGE SPEED displays. This display shows the average speed of the vehicle in miles per hour (mph) or kilometers per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. To reset the value, press and hold the set/reset button. The display will return to zero.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

Vehicle Information Menu Items

(Vehicle Information): Press this button to scroll through the following menu items:

Oil Life

Press the vehicle information button until OIL LIFE REMAINING displays. This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If you see 99% OIL LIFE REMAINING on the display, that means 99% of the current oil life remains. The engine oil life system will alert you to change the oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See "CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*. You should change the oil as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remember, you must reset the OIL LIFE yourself after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the OIL LIFE accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-20*.

Units

Press the vehicle information button until UNITS displays. This display allows you to select between English or Metric units of measurement. Once in this display, press the set/reset button to select between ENGLISH or METRIC units.

Tire Pressure

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), the pressure for each tire can be viewed in the DIC. The tire pressure will be shown in either pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa). Press the vehicle information button until the DIC displays FRONT TIRES PSI (kPa) LEFT ## RIGHT ##. Press the vehicle information button again until the DIC displays REAR TIRES PSI (kPa) LEFT ## RIGHT ##.

If a low or high tire pressure condition is detected by the system while driving, a message advising you to check the pressure in a specific tire will appear in the display. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

If the tire pressure display shows dashes instead of a value, there may be a problem with your vehicle. If this consistently occurs, see your dealer/retailer for service.

Change Compass Zone

Your vehicle may have this feature. To change the compass zone through the DIC, see *DIC Compass on page 3-47*.

Calibrate Compass

Your vehicle may have this feature. The compass can be manually calibrated. To calibrate the compass through the DIC, see *DIC Compass on page 3-47*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Relearn Remote Key

To access this display, the vehicle must be in P (Park). This display allows you to match the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to your vehicle. This procedure will erase all previously learned transmitters. Therefore, they must be relearned as additional transmitters.

To match an RKE transmitter to your vehicle:

1. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY displays.
2. Press the set/reset button until REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE is displayed.
3. Press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the first transmitter at the same time for about 15 seconds.

   A chime will sound indicating that the transmitter is matched.
4. To match additional transmitters at this time, repeat Step 3.

   Each vehicle can have a maximum of eight transmitters matched to it.
5. To exit the programming mode, you must cycle the key to LOCK/OFF.

Blank Display

This display shows no information.

DIC Compass

Your vehicle may have a compass in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Compass Zone

Your dealer/retailer will set the correct zone for your location.

Under certain circumstances, such as during a long distance cross-country trip or moving to a new state or province, it will be necessary to compensate for compass variance by resetting the zone through the DIC if the zone is not set correctly.

Compass variance is the difference between the earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If the compass is not set to the zone where you live, the compass may give false readings. The compass must be set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is traveling.

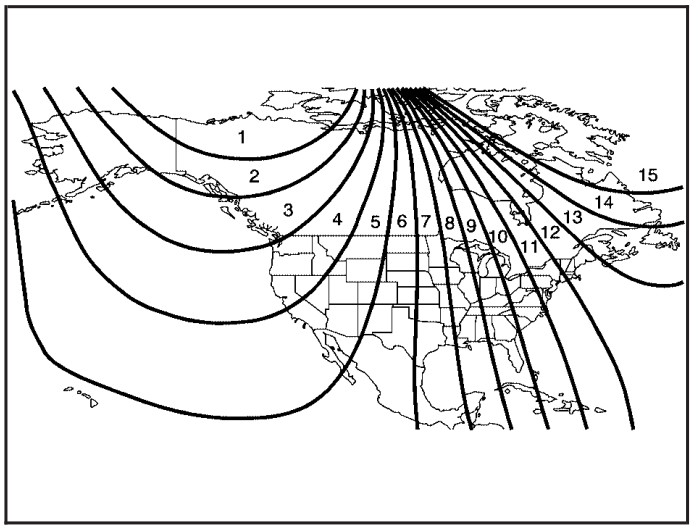
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To adjust for compass variance, use the following procedure:

Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure

1. Do not set the compass zone when the vehicle is moving. Only set it when the vehicle is in P (Park).

   Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO CHANGE COMPASS ZONE displays.



2. Find the vehicle's current location and variance zone number on the map.

   Zones 1 through 15 are available.

3. Press the set/reset button to scroll through and select the appropriate variance zone.
4. Press the trip/fuel button until the vehicle heading, for example, N for North, is displayed in the DIC.
5. If calibration is necessary, calibrate the compass. See "Compass Calibration Procedure" following.

Compass Calibration

The compass can be manually calibrated. Only calibrate the compass in a magnetically clean and safe location, such as an open parking lot, where driving the vehicle in circles is not a danger. It is suggested to calibrate away from tall buildings, utility wires, manhole covers, or other industrial structures, if possible.

If CAL should ever appear in the DIC display, the compass should be calibrated.

If the DIC display does not show a heading, for example, N for North, or the heading does not change after making turns, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic CB or cell phone antenna mount, a magnetic emergency light, magnetic note pad holder, or any other magnetic item. Turn off the vehicle, move the magnetic item, then turn on the vehicle and calibrate the compass.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To calibrate the compass, use the following procedure:

Compass Calibration Procedure

1. Before calibrating the compass, make sure the compass zone is set to the variance zone in which the vehicle is located. See “Compass Variance (Zone) Procedure” earlier in this section.

   Do not operate any switches such as window, sunroof, climate controls, seats, etc. during the calibration procedure.
2. Press the vehicle information button until PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS displays.
3. Press the set/reset button to start the compass calibration.
4. The DIC will display CALIBRATING: DRIVE IN CIRCLES. Drive the vehicle in tight circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h) to complete the calibration. The DIC will display CALIBRATION COMPLETE for a few seconds when the calibration is complete.

   The DIC display will then return to PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS.

DIC Warnings and Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another. Some messages may not require immediate action, but you can press the set/reset button to acknowledge that you received the message and clear it from the DIC display. Pressing any of the DIC buttons also acknowledges and clears any messages. Some messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be cleared. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages will only make the messages disappear, not correct the problem. The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL OFF

This message displays when the automatic headlamps are turned off. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-12* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON

This message displays when the automatic headlamps are turned on. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-12* for more information.

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the system detects that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable level. The battery saver system starts reducing certain features of the vehicle that you may be able to notice. At the point that the features are disabled, this message is displayed. It means that the vehicle is trying to save the charge in the battery.

Turn off all unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

The normal battery voltage range is 11.5 to 15.5 volts.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when service is required for the vehicle. See your dealer/retailer. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

Acknowledging the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will not reset the OIL LIFE REMAINING. That must be done at the OIL LIFE screen under the vehicle information menu. See “Oil Life” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-42* and *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-20*.

CHECK TIRE PRESSURE

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle’s tires needs to be checked. This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate which tire needs to be checked. You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. To read the other messages that may have been sent at the same time, press the set/reset button. If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire Loading Information label. See *Tires on page 5-53*, *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-42*. If the tire pressure is low, the low tire pressure warning light comes on. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-35*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVER DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the driver door is not closed properly. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

ENGINE HOT A/C (Air Conditioning) OFF

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor is automatically turned off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the A/C operation automatically resumes. You can continue to drive your vehicle. If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible to avoid compressor damage.

ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not increase the engine speed above normal idling speed. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31* for more information.**

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31* for more information.**

This message displays along with a continuous chime when the engine has overheated. Stop and turn the engine off immediately to avoid severe engine damage. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer/retailer for service as soon as possible.

ERROR

This message displays while viewing the odometer or trip odometers if there is a problem with the instrument panel cluster. See your dealer/retailer for service.

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when your vehicle is low on fuel. Refill the fuel tank as soon as possible. See *Fuel Gage on page 3-41* and *Filling the Tank on page 5-10* for more information.

HOOD OPEN

If your vehicle has the remote start feature, this message displays when the hood is not closed properly. Make sure that the hood is closed completely. See *Hood Release on page 5-13*.

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when the outside air temperature is cold enough to create icy road conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly.

LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the driver side rear door is not closed properly. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

OIL PRESSURE LOW STOP ENGINE

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17* for more information.**

This message displays when the vehicle's engine oil pressure is low. The oil pressure light also appears on the instrument panel cluster. See *Oil Pressure Light on page 3-39*.

Stop the vehicle immediately, as engine damage can result from driving a vehicle with low oil pressure. Have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible when this message is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the front passenger door is not closed properly. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays while you are matching a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to your vehicle. See “Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* and *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-42* for more information.

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced. To replace the battery, see “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5*.

RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN

This message displays when the passenger side rear door is not closed properly. Make sure that the door is closed completely.

SERVICE A/C (Air Conditioning) SYSTEM

This message displays when the electronic sensors that control the air conditioning and heating systems are no longer working. Have the climate control system serviced by your dealer/retailer if you notice a drop in heating and air conditioning efficiency.

SERVICE AIR BAG

This message displays when there is a problem with the airbag system. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-28* for more information.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the generator and battery charging systems. Driving with this problem could drain the battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have the electrical system checked by your dealer/retailer immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

This message displays when service is required on the brake system. Have the brake system serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible. The brake system warning light also appears on the instrument panel cluster when this message appears on the DIC. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-30*.

SERVICE POWER STEERING

This message displays when a problem is detected with the power steering system. When this message is displayed, you may notice that the effort required to steer the vehicle increases or feels heavier, but you will still be able to steer the vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately.

SERVICE STABILITRAK

If your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this message displays if there has been a problem detected with ESC. The ESC/TCS light also appears on the instrument panel cluster. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* for more information.

If this message turns on while you are driving, pull off the road as soon as possible and stop carefully. Try resetting the system by turning the ignition off and then back on. If this message still stays on or turns back on again while you are driving, your vehicle needs service. Have the system inspected by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SERVICE THEFT SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the theft-deterrent system programmed in the key. A fault has been detected in the system which means that the system is disabled and it is not protecting the vehicle. The vehicle usually restarts; however, you may want to take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer before turning off the engine. See *PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation on page 2-18* for more information.

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the TPMS is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Light on page 3-35*. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-63* for more information. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays when the system is not functioning properly. A warning light also appears on the instrument panel cluster. See *Traction Control System (TCS) Warning Light on page 3-32*. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* for more information. Have the TCS serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays when there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer/retailer for service.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays when a non-emissions related malfunction occurs. Have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

STABILITRAK NOT READY

If your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this message may display and the ESC/TCS light on the instrument panel cluster may be on after first driving the vehicle and exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds. The ESC system is not functional until the light has turned off. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 4-6* for more information.

STARTING DISABLED SERVICE THROTTLE

This message displays if the starting of the engine is disabled due to the electronic throttle control system. Have your vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer immediately.

This message only appears while the ignition is in ON/RUN, and will not disappear until the problem is resolved.

This message cannot be acknowledged.

THEFT ATTEMPTED

This message displays if the content theft-deterrent system has detected a break-in attempt while you were away from your vehicle. See *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16* for more information.

TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message may be displayed if the gas cap is not on, or is not fully tightened. Check the gas cap to ensure that it is on properly. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-10* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

On vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the TPMS is re-learning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be re-learned after rotating the tires or after replacing a tire or sensor. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-67*, *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-62*, and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60* for more information.

TRACTION CONTROL OFF

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays when the TCS turns off. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* for more information.

This message only displays while the ignition is in ON/RUN and disappears after 10 seconds, unless it is acknowledged or an urgent warning appears.

Any of the following conditions may cause the TCS to turn off:

- The TCS is turned off by pressing the traction control button. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* for more information.
- The battery is low.
- There is a TCS failure. See your dealer/retailer for service.

TRACTION CONTROL ON

If your vehicle has the Traction Control System (TCS), this message displays when the TCS is turned on. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8* for more information.

TRANSMISSION HOT IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the transmission fluid in your vehicle is too hot. Stop the vehicle and allow it to idle until it cools down. If the warning message continues to display, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer/retailer as soon as possible.

TRUNK OPEN

This message displays when the trunk is not closed completely. Make sure that the trunk is closed completely. See *Trunk on page 2-12*.

TURN SIGNAL ON

This message displays as a reminder to turn off the turn signal if you drive your vehicle for more than about 0.75 mile (1.2 km) with a turn signal on. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

This message displays and a chime sounds only when the ignition is in ON/RUN. The message will not disappear until the turn signal is manually turned off, or a turn is completed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message displays when the windshield washer fluid is low. Fill the windshield washer reservoir as soon as possible. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for the location of the windshield washer reservoir. Also, see *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35* for more information.

DIC Vehicle Customization

Your vehicle has customization capabilities that allow you to program certain features to one preferred setting. Customization features can only be programmed to one setting on the vehicle and cannot be programmed to a preferred setting for two different drivers.

All of the customization options may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on the DIC.

The default settings for the customization features were set when your vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

The customization preferences are automatically recalled.

To change customization preferences, use the following procedure.

Entering the Feature Settings Menu

1. Turn the ignition on and place the vehicle in P (Park).

   To avoid excessive drain on the battery, it is recommended that the headlamps are turned off.

2. Press the customization button to enter the feature settings menu.

   If the menu is not available, FEATURE SETTINGS AVAILABLE IN PARK will display. Before entering the menu, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).

Feature Settings Menu Items

The following are customization features that allow you to program settings to the vehicle:

DISPLAY IN ENGLISH

This feature will only display if a language other than English has been set. This feature allows you to change the language in which the DIC messages appear to English.

Press the customization button until the PRESS ✓ TO DISPLAY IN ENGLISH screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to display all DIC messages in English.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY LANGUAGE

This feature allows you to select the language in which the DIC messages will appear.

Press the customization button until the DISPLAY LANGUAGE screen appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

ENGLISH (default): All messages will appear in English.

FRANCAIS: All messages will appear in French.

ESPANOL: All messages will appear in Spanish.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

AUTO DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select whether or not to turn off the automatic door unlocking feature. It also allows you to select which doors and when the doors will automatically unlock. See *Programmable Automatic Door Unlock on page 2-11* for more information.

Press the customization button until AUTO DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: None of the doors will automatically unlock.

DRIVER AT KEY OUT: Only the driver's door will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

DRIVER IN PARK: Only the driver's door will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

ALL AT KEY OUT: All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

ALL IN PARK (default): All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE DOOR LOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when locking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if any of the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR LOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

HORN & LIGHTS OFF: There will be no feedback when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ONLY: The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN ONLY: The horn will sound on the second press of the lock button on the RKE transmitter.

HORN & LIGHTS ON (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the lock button on the RKE transmitter, and the horn will sound when the lock button is pressed again within five seconds of the previous command.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK

This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. You will not receive feedback when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter if the doors are open. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

LIGHTS OFF: The exterior lamps will not flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

LIGHTS ON (default): The exterior lamps will flash when you press the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXIT LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select the amount of time you want the exterior lamps to remain on when it is dark enough outside. This happens after the key is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF.

Press the customization button until EXIT LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lamps will not turn on.

30 SECONDS (default): The exterior lamps will stay on for 30 seconds.

1 MINUTE: The exterior lamps will stay on for one minute.

2 MINUTES: The exterior lamps will stay on for two minutes.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

APPROACH LIGHTING

This feature allows you to select whether or not to have the exterior lights turn on briefly during low light periods after unlocking the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Press the customization button until APPROACH LIGHTING appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The exterior lights will not turn on when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

ON (default): If it is dark enough outside, the exterior lights will turn on briefly when you unlock the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

The lights will remain on for 20 seconds or until the lock button on the RKE transmitter is pressed, or the vehicle is no longer off. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-5* for more information.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHIME VOLUME

This feature allows you to select the volume level of the chime.

Press the customization button until CHIME VOLUME appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

NORMAL: The chime volume will be set to a normal level.

LOUD: The chime volume will be set to a loud level.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

There is no default for chime volume. The volume will stay at the last known setting.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

REMOTE START

If your vehicle has this feature, it allows you to turn the remote start off or on. The remote start feature allows you to start the engine from outside of the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for more information.

Press the customization button until REMOTE START appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

OFF: The remote start feature will be disabled.

ON (default): The remote start feature will be enabled.

NO CHANGE: No change will be made to this feature. The current setting will remain.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FACTORY SETTINGS

This feature allows you to set all of the customization features back to their factory default settings.

Press the customization button until FACTORY SETTINGS appears on the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to access the settings for this feature. Then press the customization button to scroll through the following settings:

RESTORE ALL (default): The customization features will be set to their factory default settings.

DO NOT RESTORE: The customization features will not be set to their factory default settings.

To select a setting, press the set/reset button while the desired setting is displayed on the DIC.

EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS

This feature allows you to exit the FEATURE SETTINGS menu.

Press the customization button until FEATURE SETTINGS PRESS ✓ TO EXIT appears in the DIC display. Press the set/reset button once to exit the menu.

If you do not exit, pressing the customization button again will return you to the beginning of the FEATURE SETTINGS menu.

Exiting the Feature Settings Menu

The feature settings menu will be exited when any of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).
- The vehicle is no longer in ON/RUN.
- The trip/fuel or vehicle information DIC buttons are pressed.
- The end of the feature settings menu is reached and exited.
- A 40 second time period has elapsed with no selection made.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System(s)

Determine which radio the vehicle has and read the following pages to become familiar with its features.

⚠ CAUTION:

Taking your eyes off the road for extended periods could cause a crash resulting in injury or death to you or others. Do not give extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving.

This system provides access to many audio and non audio listings.

To minimize taking your eyes off the road while driving, do the following while the vehicle is parked:

- Become familiar with the operation and controls of the audio system.
- Set up the tone, speaker adjustments, and preset radio stations.

For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 4-2*.

Notice: **Contact your dealer/retailer before adding any equipment.**

Adding audio or communication equipment could interfere with the operation of the vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and could damage them. Follow federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone equipment.

The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-21* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Setting the Clock

Without Date Display

AM/FM Base Radio with a Single CD Player

This radio has a button for setting the time.

To set the time:

1. Press the button until the hour begins flashing on display. Press a second time and the minutes begin flashing on display.
2. To increase or decrease the time, do one of the following while the hours or minutes are flashing:
   - Turn the knob.
   - Press SEEK or SEEK.
   - Press FWD or REV.
3. Press the button again until the clock display stops flashing to set the currently displayed time, or wait five seconds until the flashing stops and the current time displayed is automatically set.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour, press the button until 12H or 24H is displayed. Once 12H or 24H is displayed, turn the knob to the desired option to select the setting. Press the button again to apply the setting, or let the screen time out.

With Date Display

Single CD (MP3) Player

This radio has a button for setting the time.

To set the time and date:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the button and the HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY (hour, minute, month, day, and year) displays.
3. Press the pushbutton located under any one of the tabs to be changed.
4. To increase the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the pushbutton below the selected tab.
   - Turn the knob clockwise.
   - Press SEEK.
   - Press FWD.
5. To decrease the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Turn the knob counter-clockwise.
   - Press SEEK.
   - Press REV.

The date does not automatically display. To see the date press the button while the radio is on. The date with display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Six-Disc CD (MP3) Player

This type of radio has a MENU button instead of the clock button to set the time and date.

To set the time and date, follow these instructions:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press the MENU button.
3. Once the option displays, press the pushbutton located under that tab. HR, MIN, MM, DD, YYYY displays.
4. To increase the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Press the pushbutton below the selected tab.
   - Turn the knob clockwise.
   - Press SEEK.
   - Press FWD.
5. To decrease the time or date, do one of the following:
   - Turn the knob counter-clockwise.
   - Press SEEK.
   - Press REV.

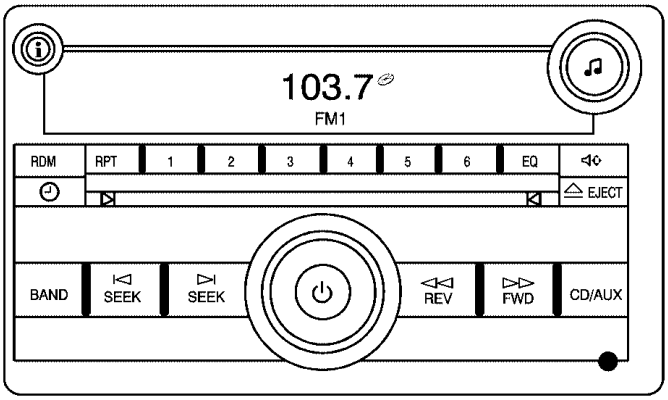
The date does not automatically display. To see the date press the MENU button and then the button while the radio is on. The date with display times out after a few seconds and goes back to the normal radio and time display.

To change the time default setting from 12 hour to 24 hour or to change the date default setting from month/day/year to day/month/year:

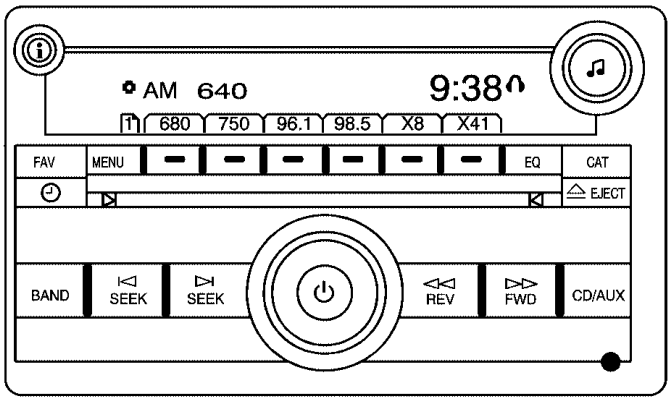
1. Press the button and then the pushbutton located under the forward arrow tab. Once the time 12H and 24H, and the date MM/DD/YYYY (month, day, and year) and DD/MM/YYYY (day, month, and year) displays.
2. Press the pushbutton located under the desired option.
3. Press the or MENU button again to apply the selected default, or let the screen time out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio(s)



Radio with CD (Base)



Radio with CD (MP3) shown,
Radio with Six-Disc CD (MP3) similar

The vehicle has one of these radios as its audio system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Data System (RDS)

The radio may have the Radio Data System (RDS) feature. RDS is available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. While the radio is tuned to an FM-RDS station, the station name or call letters display. In rare cases, a radio station can broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

Playing the Radio

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Press to turn the system on and off.

Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the volume.

The radio goes to the previous volume setting when the radio is turned on. The volume can still be adjusted by using the volume knob.

Speed Compensated Volume (SCV): The Radio with CD (MP3) and the Radio with Six-Disc CD (MP3) have SCV. SCV automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise as the vehicle increases or decreases speed while driving. The volume level should sound about the same while driving.
To activate SCV:

1. Set the radio volume to the desired level.
2. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
3. Press the pushbutton under the AUTO VOLUM (automatic volume) tab on the radio display.
4. Press the pushbutton under the desired Speed Compensated Volume setting (OFF, Low, Med, or High) to select the level of radio volume compensation. The display times out after approximately 10 seconds. Each higher setting allows for more radio volume compensation at faster vehicle speeds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Finding a Station

BAND: Press to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM™. The selection displays.

♫ **(Tune):** Turn to select radio stations.

⏮ **SEEK** ⏭ **:** Press to go to the previous or the next station and stay there.

To scan stations, press and hold either arrow for a few seconds until the radio beeps once. The radio goes to a station, plays for a few seconds, then goes to the next station. Press either arrow again to stop scanning.

The radio seeks and scans stations only with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

i (Information) (Radio with CD (Base)): Press to switch the display between the radio station frequency and the time. While the ignition is off, press to display the time.

i (Information) (With XM™ Satellite Radio Service, MP3, and RDS Features): Press to display additional text information related to the current FM-RDS or XM station; or CD, MP3 or WMA song. If information is available during XM, CD, MP3 or WMA playback, the song title information displays on the top line of the display and artist information displays on the bottom line. When information is not available, No Info displays.

Setting Preset Stations (Radio with CD (Base))

If the radio does not have XM, up to 18 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons. To program presets:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, or AM.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons for three seconds until a beep sounds. When that pushbutton is pressed and released, the station that was set, returns.
5. Repeat the Steps 2 through 4 for each pushbutton.

Storing a Radio Station as a Favorite

Drivers are encouraged to set up their radio station favorites while the vehicle is in P (Park). Tune to favorite stations using the presets, favorites button, and steering wheel controls if the vehicle has this feature. See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2*.

If the vehicle has XM and has a FAV button, a maximum of 36 stations can be programmed as favorites using the six pushbuttons positioned below the radio station frequency tabs and by using the radio favorites page button (FAV button).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FAV (Favorites): Press to go through up to six pages of favorites, each having six favorite stations available per page. Each page of favorites can contain any combination of AM, FM, or XM stations. To store a station as a favorite:

1. Tune to the desired radio station.
2. Press the FAV button to display the page where you want the station stored.
3. Press and hold one of the six pushbuttons until a beep sounds. When that pushbutton is pressed and released, the station that was set, returns.
4. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton radio station you want stored as a favorite.

The number of favorites pages can be setup using the MENU button. To setup the number of favorites pages:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the FAV 1-6 tab.
3. Select the desired number of favorites pages by pressing the pushbutton located below the displayed page numbers.
4. Press the FAV button, or let the menu time out, to return to the original main radio screen showing the radio station frequency tabs and to begin the process of programming favorites for the chosen amount of numbered pages.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Midrange/Treble)

BASS/MID/TREB (Bass, Midrange, or Treble): The radio may display some or all tones, such as BASS, MID, and TREB. To adjust the tone settings, press the ♫ knob until the tone control tabs display. Press the pushbutton positioned under the desired tab, then turn the ♫ knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the highlighted setting. The highlighted setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow, ▷▷ FWD, or ◁◁ REV button until the desired levels are obtained. If a station's frequency is weak, or has static, decrease the treble.

The radio may be capable of adjusting bass, midrange, or treble to the middle position by pressing the pushbutton positioned under the BASS, MID (midrange), or TREB (treble) tab for more than two seconds. The radio beeps once and the level adjusts to the middle position.

The radio may also be capable of adjusting all tone and speaker controls to the middle position by pressing the ♫ knob for more than two seconds until the radio beeps once.

EQ (Equalization): Press to select preset equalization settings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return to the manual mode, press until Manual displays or start to manually adjust the bass and depending on the radio, midrange, or treble by pressing the ♫ knob.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

BAL/FADE (Balance/Fade): To adjust balance or fade, press the if the radio has this symbol, or the ♫ knob until the speaker control tabs display. Continue pressing to highlight the desired tab, or press the pushbutton positioned under the desired tab. Turn the ♫ knob clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the setting. The setting can also be adjusted by pressing either SEEK arrow, ▷▷ FWD, or ◁◁ REV until the desired levels are obtained.

The radio may be capable of adjusting balance or fade to the middle position by pressing the pushbutton positioned under the BAL or FADE tab for more than two seconds. The radio beeps once and the level adjusts to the middle position.

The radio may also be capable of adjusting all speaker and tone controls to the middle position by pressing the ♫ knob for more than two seconds until the radio beeps once.

Finding a Category (CAT) Station (XM™ Satellite Radio Service Only)

CAT (Category): The radio may have the CAT button feature. To select and find a desired category:

1. Press the BAND button until the XM frequency displays. Press the CAT button to display the category tabs on the radio display. Continue pressing the CAT button until the desired category name displays.
2. Press either of the two buttons below the desired category tab to immediately tune to the first XM station associated with that category.
3. Turn the ♫ knob, press the buttons below the right or left arrows displayed, or press the SEEK arrows to go to the previous or to the next XM station within the selected category.
4. To exit the category search mode, press the FAV button or BAND button to display favorites again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Undesired XM categories can be removed through the setup menu. To remove an undesired category:

1. Press the MENU button to display the radio setup menu.
2. Press the pushbutton located below the XM CAT tab.
3. Turn the ♫ knob to display the category to be removed.
4. Press the pushbutton located under the Remove tab until the category name along with the word Removed displays.
5. Repeat the steps to remove more categories.

Removed categories can be restored by pressing the pushbutton under the Add tab when a removed category displays or by pressing the pushbutton under the Restore All tab.

Categories cannot be removed or added while the vehicle is moving faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Radio Messages

Calibration Error: The audio system has been calibrated for the vehicle from the factory. If Calibration Error displays, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and it must be returned to your dealer/retailer for service.

Loc or Locked: If Loc or Locked displays, it means the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. XM Satellite Radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast-to-coast, and in digital-quality sound. During your trial or when you subscribe, you will get unlimited access to XM Radio Online for when you are not in the vehicle. A service fee is required to receive the XM service. For more information, contact XM at xmradio.com or call 1-800-929-2100 in the U.S. and xmradio.ca or call 1-877-438-9677 in Canada.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Messages for XM™ Only

See *XM Radio Messages on page 3-81* later in this section for further detail.

Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in and the CD should begin playing.

If the ignition or radio is turned off while a CD in the player it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts to play where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When the CD is inserted, the CD symbol displays. As each new track starts to play, the track number displays.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

For vehicles that have a Radio with a Six-Disc CD player:

LOAD : Press to load CDs into the CD player. This CD player holds up to six CDs.

To insert one CD, do the following:

1. Press and release the load button.
2. Wait for the message to insert the disc.
3. Load a CD. Insert the CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player pulls the CD in.

To insert multiple CDs:

1. Press and hold the load button for two seconds. A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays.
2. Follow the displayed instruction on when to insert the discs. The CD player takes up to six CDs.
3. Press this button again to cancel loading more CDs.

If the ignition or radio is turned off, while a CD is in the player, it stays in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD starts playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EJECT: For the Radio with a Single CD player, press to eject the CD. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player.

For the Radio with a Six-Disc CD player, press and release to eject the CD that is currently playing. The radio beeps once and Ejecting Disc displays. Once the disc is ejected, Remove Disc displays. The CD can be removed. If the CD is not removed, after several seconds, the CD automatically pulls back into the player and begins playing. Press and hold for two seconds to eject all discs.

(Tune): Turn to select tracks on the CD currently playing.

SEEK : Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current track, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right arrow to go to the next track. If either arrow is held, or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through the tracks on the CD.

REV (Fast Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly within a track. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release to resume playing the track. The elapsed time of the track displays.

RDM (Random): Tracks can be listened to in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all CDs in a Six-disc CD player.

To use random on the base radio with Single CD player, press the RDM button to play tracks from a CD in random order. The random icon displays. Press again to turn off random play. The random icon disappears from the display.

To use random on an Uplevel Radio with a Single CD player:

1. Press the CD/AUX button, insert a disc partway into the slot of the CD player. A RDM tab displays.
2. To play the tracks in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays. Press the pushbutton again to turn off random play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use random on a radio with a Six-Disc CD player:

1. Press the CD/AUX button, press and hold ▽ . A beep sounds and Load All Discs displays. Insert one or more discs partway into the slot of the CD player.
2. To play tracks from all CDs loaded in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

RPT (Repeat): With repeat, one track or an entire CD can be repeated.

To use repeat on the base radio with a Single CD player:

- Press and release the RPT button to repeat the current track. An arrow symbol displays. Press again to turn off repeat play.
- Press and hold the RPT button for a few seconds to repeat the CD. An arrow symbol displays. Press again to turn off repeat play. When repeat is off, the symbol no longer displays.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio while a CD is playing. The CD remains inside the radio for future listening.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD while listening to the radio. The CD icon and a message showing disc and/or track number displays when a CD is in the player. Press this button again and the system automatically searches for an auxiliary input device, such as a portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device Found may display.

Care of CDs

If playing a CD-R, the sound quality can be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. Handle them carefully. Store CD-R(s) in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. The CD player scans the bottom surface of the disc. If the surface of a CD is damaged, such as cracked, broken, or scratched, the CD does not play properly or not at all. Do not touch the bottom side of a CD while handling it; this could damage the surface. Pick up CDs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

If the surface of a CD is soiled, take a soft, lint free cloth or dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution mixed with water, and clean it. Make sure the wiping process starts from the center to the edge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of the CD Player

Do not add any label to a CD, it could get caught in the CD player. If a CD is recorded on a personal computer and a description label is needed, try labeling the top of the recorded CD with a marking pen.

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD player mechanism.

Notice: **If a label is added to a CD, or more than one CD is inserted into the slot at a time, or an attempt is made to play scratched or damaged CDs, the CD player could be damaged. While using the CD player, use only CDs in good condition without any label, load one CD at a time, and keep the CD player and the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.**

If an error displays, see "CD Messages" later in this section.

Playing an MP3 CD-R or CD-RW Disc

The radio may have MP3 CD-R or CD-RW disc capability. For more information, see *Using an MP3 on page 3-77* later in this section.

CD Messages

CHECK DISC: If an error message displays and/or the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- The road is very rough. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There could have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label could be caught in the CD player.

If there is no apparent damage, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealer/retailer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your dealer/retailer while reporting the problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

The radio system has an auxiliary input jack located on the lower right side of the faceplate. This is not an audio output; do not plug the headphone set into the front auxiliary input jack. However, an external audio device such as an iPod, laptop computer, MP3 player, CD changer, or cassette tape player, etc. can be connected to the auxiliary input jack for use as another source for audio listening.

Drivers are encouraged to set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park). See *Defensive Driving on page 4-2* for more information on driver distraction.

To use a portable audio player, connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 inch) cable to the radio's front auxiliary input jack. While a device is connected, press the radio CD/AUX button to begin playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

⏻ **(Power/Volume):** Turn to increase or decrease the volume of the portable player. Additional volume adjustments might need to be made from the portable device.

BAND: Press to listen to the radio while a portable audio device is playing. The portable audio device continues playing until it is stopped or turned off.

CD/AUX (CD/Auxiliary): Press to play a CD while a portable audio device is playing. Press again and the system begins playing audio from the connected portable audio player. If a portable audio player is not connected, No Aux Input Device Found may display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using an MP3

MP3 CD-R or CD-RW Disc

The radio may have MP3 capability. With this feature, the radio plays MP3 files that were recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc. Song title, artist name, and album can display when files are recorded using ID3 tags version 1 and 2.

Compressed Audio

The radio also plays discs that contain both uncompressed CD audio (.CDA files) and MP3 files. By default the radio reads only the uncompressed audio and ignore the MP3 files. Pressing the CAT button toggles between compressed and uncompressed audio format.

MP3 Format

If you burn your own MP3 disc on a personal computer:

- Make sure the MP3 files are recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW disc.
- Do not mix standard audio and MP3 files on one disc.
- The CD player is able to read and play a maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files.
- Create a folder structure that makes it easy to find songs while driving. Organize songs by albums using one folder for each album. Each folder or album should contain 18 songs or less.
- Avoid subfolders. The system can support up to 8 subfolders deep, however, keep the total number of folders to a minimum in order to reduce the complexity and confusion in trying to locate a particular folder during playback.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Make sure playlists have a .mp3 or .wpl extension (other file extensions might not work).
- Minimize the length of the file, folder or playlist names. Long file, folder, or playlist names, or a combination of a large number of files and folders, or playlists can cause the player to be unable to play up to the maximum number of files, folders, playlists, or sessions. If you wish to play a large number of files, folders, playlists, or sessions, minimize the length of the file, folder, or playlist name. Long names also take up more space on the display, potentially getting cut off.
- Finalize the audio disc before burning it. Trying to add music to an existing disc can cause the disc not to function in the player.

Playlists can be changed by using the previous and next folder buttons, the ♫ knob, or the seek buttons. An MP3 CD-R or CD-RW that was recorded using no file folders can also be played. If a CD contains more than the maximum of 50 folders, 50 playlists, and 255 files, the player lets you access and navigate up to the maximum, but all items over the maximum cannot be accessed.

Root Directory

The root directory of the CD is treated as a folder. If the root directory has compressed audio files, the directory displays as F1 ROOT. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders. However, playlists (Px) are always accessed before root folders or files.

Empty Directory or Folder

If a root directory or a folder exists somewhere in the file structure that contains only folders/subfolders and no compressed files directly beneath them, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains compressed audio files. The empty folder does not display.

No Folder

When the CD contains only compressed files, the files are located under the root folder. The next and previous folder functions do not function on a CD that was recorded without folders or playlists. When displaying the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

When the CD contains only playlists and compressed audio files, but no folders, all files are located under the root folder. The folder down and the folder up buttons searches playlists (Px) first and then goes to the root folder. When the radio displays the name of the folder the radio displays ROOT.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Order of Play

Tracks recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW are played in the following order:

- Play begins from the first track in the first playlist and continues sequentially through all tracks in each playlist. When the last track of the last playlist has played, play continues from the first track of the first playlist.
- Play begins from the first track in the first folder and continues sequentially through all tracks in each folder. When the last track of the last folder has played, play continues from the first track of the first folder.

When play enters a new folder, the display does not automatically show the new folder name unless the folder mode has been chosen as the default display. The new track name displays.

File System and Naming

The song name that displays is the song name that is contained in the ID3 tag. If the song name is not present in the ID3 tag, then the radio displays the file name without the extension (such as .mp3) as the track name.

Track names longer than 32 characters or four pages are shortened. The display does not show parts of words on the last page of text and the extension of the filename is not displayed.

Preprogrammed Playlists

Preprogrammed playlists that were created using WinAmp™, MusicMatch™, or Real Jukebox™ software can be accessed, however, you do not have playlist editing capability using the radio. These playlists are treated as special folders containing compressed audio song files.

Playing an MP3

Insert a CD partway into the slot (Single CD Player), or press the load button and wait for the message to insert disc (Six-Disc CD Player), label side up. The player pulls it in, and the CD should begin playing.

♫ **(Tune):** Turn this knob to select MP3 files on the CD currently playing.

⏮ **SEEK** ⏭ **:** Press the left SEEK arrow to go to the start of the current MP3 file, if more than ten seconds have played. Press the right SEEK arrow to go to the next MP3 file. If either SEEK arrow is held or pressed multiple times, the player continues moving backward or forward through MP3 files on the CD.

(Previous Folder): Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder tab to go to the first track in the previous folder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Next Folder): Press the pushbutton positioned under the Folder tab to go to the first track in the next folder.

REV (Reverse): Press and hold to reverse playback quickly within an MP3 file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release this button to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

FWD (Fast Forward): Press and hold to advance playback quickly within an MP3 file. Sound is heard at a reduced volume. Release this button to resume playing the file. The elapsed time of the file displays.

RDM (Random): MP3 files can be listened to on a CD in random, rather than sequential order, on one CD or all discs in a Six-Disc CD player. To use random, do one of the following:

1. To play MP3 files in random order from the CD that is currently playing, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM tab until Random Current Disc displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.
2. To play songs from all CDs loaded in a Six-Disc CD player in random order, press the pushbutton positioned under the RDM tab until Randomize All Discs displays. Press the same pushbutton again to turn off random play.

(Music Navigator): If the radio has the MP3 feature, it has the music navigator feature to play MP3 files on the CD-R or CD-RW in order by artist or album. Press the pushbutton located below the music navigator tab. The player scans the disc to sort the files by artist and album ID3 tag information. It can take several minutes to scan the disc depending on the number of MP3 files recorded to the CD-R or CD-RW. The radio might begin playing while it is scanning the disc in the background. When the scan is finished, the CD begins playing again.

Once the disc has scanned, the player defaults to playing MP3 files in order by artist. The current artist playing is shown on the second line of the display between the arrows. Once all songs by that artist are played, the player moves to the next artist in alphabetical order on the CD and begins playing MP3 files by that artist. If you want to listen to MP3 files by another artist, press the pushbutton located below either arrow button. The CD goes to the next or previous artist in alphabetical order. Continue pressing either button until the desired artist displays.

To change from playback by artist to playback by album, press the pushbutton located below the Sort By tab. From the sort screen, push one of the buttons below the album button. Press the pushbutton below the back tab to return to the main music navigator screen. Now the album name displays on the second line between the arrows and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

songs from the current album begins to play. Once all songs from that album have played, the player moves to the next album in alphabetical order on the CD and begins playing MP3 files from that album.

To exit music navigator mode, press the pushbutton below the Back tab to return to normal MP3 playback.

XM Radio Messages

XL (Explicit Language Channels): These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

XM Updating: The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.

No XM Signal: The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When the vehicle is moved into an open area, the signal should return.

Loading XM: The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.

Channel Off Air: This channel is not currently in service. Tune in to another channel.

Channel Unauth: This channel is blocked or cannot be received with your XM Subscription package.

Channel Unavail: This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.

No Artist Info: No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Title Info: No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No CAT Info: No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

No Information: No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

CAT Not Found: There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.

XM Theftlocked: The XM receiver in the vehicle could have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having the vehicle serviced, check with your dealer/retailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

XM Radio ID: If tuned to channel 0, this message alternates with the XM™ Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.

Unknown: If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there could be a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Check XM Receivr: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

XM Not Available: If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver could have a fault. Consult with your dealer/retailer.

Bluetooth®

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth capable cell phone with a Hands Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The system can be used while the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 30 ft. (9.1 m). Not all phones support all functions, and not all phones are guaranteed to work with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See gm.com/bluetooth for more information on compatible phones.

Voice Recognition

The Bluetooth system uses voice recognition to interpret voice commands to dial phone numbers and name tags.

Noise: Keep interior noise levels to a minimum. The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

When to Speak: A short tone sounds after the system responds indicating when it is waiting for a voice command. Wait until the tone and then speak.

How to Speak: Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

Audio System

When using the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the audio system volume knob, during a call, to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. To prevent missed calls, a minimum volume level is used if the volume is turned down too low.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons located on the steering wheel to operate the in-vehicle Bluetooth system. See *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-94* for more information.

(Push To Talk): Press to answer incoming calls, to confirm system information, and to start speech recognition.

(Phone On Hook): Press to end a call, reject a call, or to cancel an operation.

Pairing

A Bluetooth enabled cell phone must be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system first and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls will be made using OnStar® Hands-Free Calling, if available. Refer to the OnStar owner's guide for more information.

Pairing Information:

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- The in-vehicle Bluetooth system automatically links with the first available paired cell phone in the order the phone was paired.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the in-vehicle Bluetooth system at a time.
- Pairing should only need to be completed once, unless changes to the pairing information have been made or the phone is deleted.

To link to a different paired phone, see Linking to a Different Phone later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pairing a Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Pair”. The system responds with instructions and a four digit PIN number. The PIN number will be used in Step 4.
4. Start the Pairing process on the cell phone that will be paired to the vehicle. Reference the cell phone manufacturers user guide for information on this process.

   Locate the device named “General Motors” in the list on the cellular phone and follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the four digit PIN number that was provided in Step 3.
5. The system prompts for a name for the phone. Use a name that best describes the phone. This name will be used to indicate which phone is connected. The system then confirms the name provided.
6. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
7. Repeat Steps 1 through 7 for additional phones to be paired.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “List”. The system lists all the paired Bluetooth devices. If a phone is connected to the vehicle, the system will say “Is connected” after the connected phone.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Delete”. The system asks which phone to delete followed by a tone.
4. Say the name of the phone to be deleted. If the phone name is unknown, use the “List” command for a list of all paired phones. The system responds with “Would you like to delete <phone name>? Yes or No” followed by a tone.
5. Say “Yes” to delete the phone. The system responds with “OK, deleting <phone name>”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Linking to a Different Phone

1. Press and hold ☎ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Change phone”. The system responds with “Please wait while I search for other phones”.
   - If another phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected”.
   - If another phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Storing Name Tags

The system can store up to thirty phone numbers as name tags that are shared between the Bluetooth and OnStar systems.

The system uses the following commands to store and retrieve phone numbers:

- Store
- Digit Store
- Directory

Using the Store Command

The store command allows a phone number to be stored without entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold ☎ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Store”. The system responds with “Store, number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the complete phone number to be stored at once with no pauses.
   - If the system recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Storing” and repeats the phone number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the phone number, it responds with “Store” and repeats the number followed by “Please say yes or no”. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.
4. After the system stores the phone number, it responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Digit Store Command

The digit store command allows a phone number to be stored by entering the digits individually.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Store”. The system responds with “Please say the first digit to store” followed by a tone.
3. Say the first digit to be stored. The system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone. Continue entering digits until the number to be stored is complete.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.
4. After the complete number has been entered, say “Store”. The system responds with “Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
5. Say a name tag for the phone number. The name tag is recorded and the system responds with “About to store <name tag>. Does that sound OK?”.
   - If the name tag does not sound correct, say “No” and repeat Step 5.
   - If the name tag sounds correct, say “Yes” and the name tag is stored. After the number is stored the system returns to the main menu.

Using the Directory Command

The directory command lists all of the name tags stored by the system. To use the directory command:

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Directory”. The system responds with “Directory” and then plays back all of the stored name tags. When the list is complete, the system returns to the main menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deleting Name Tags

The system uses the following commands to delete name tags:

- Delete
- Delete all name tags

Using the Delete Command

The delete command allows specific name tags to be deleted.

To use the delete command:

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete”. The system responds with “Delete, please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to be deleted. The system responds with “Would you like to delete, <name tag>? Please say yes or no”.
   - If the name tag is correct, say “Yes” to delete the name tag. The system responds with “OK, deleting <name tag>, returning to the main menu.”
   - If the name tag is incorrect, say “No”. The system responds with “No. OK, let’s try again, please say the name tag.”

Using the Delete All Name Tags Command

The delete all name tags command deletes all stored phone book name tags and route name tags for OnStar (if present).

To use the delete all name tags command:

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete all name tags”. The system responds with “You are about to delete all name tags stored in your phone directory and your route destination directory. Are you sure you want to do this? Please say yes or no.”
   - Say “Yes” to delete all name tags.
   - Say “No” to cancel the function and return to the main menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands:

- Dial
- Digit Dial
- Call
- Re-dial

Using the Dial Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dial using <phone name>. “Number please” followed by a tone.
3. Say the entire number without pausing.
   - If the system recognizes the number, it responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If the system does not recognize the number, it confirms the numbers followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number. If the number is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the number to be re-entered.

Using the Digit Dial Command

1. Press and hold ☎ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Dial”. The system responds with “Digit dial using <phone name>, please say the first digit to dial” followed by a tone.
3. Say the digit to be dialed one at a time. Following each digit, the system will repeat back the digit it heard followed by a tone.
4. Continue entering digits until the number to be dialed is complete. After the whole number has been entered, say “Dial”. The system responds with “OK, Dialing” and dials the number.
   - If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Clear” at any time to clear the last number.
   - To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time and the system will repeat them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Call Command

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Call”. The system responds with “Call using <phone name>. Please say the name tag” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag of the person to call.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number.
   - If the system is unsure it recognizes the right name tag, it confirms the name tag followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, calling, <name tag>” and dials the number. If the name tag is not correct, say “No”. The system will ask for the name tag to be re-entered.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the Re-dial Command

1. Press and hold ✆ «ξ for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Re-dial”. The system responds with “Re-dial using <phone name>” and dials the last number called from the connected Bluetooth phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press ✆ «ξ and begin speaking to answer the call.
- Press ↩ ▽ to ignore a call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

- Press ✆ to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press ✆ again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, continue with the original call with no action.
- Press ▽ to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Three-Way Calling

Three-Way Calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

1. While on a call press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Three-way call”. The system responds with “Three-way call, please say dial or call”.
3. Use the dial or call command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press ✆ to link all the callers together.

Ending a Call

Press ▽ to end a call.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

To Mute a call

1. Press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Call muted”.

To Cancel Mute

1. Press ✆ . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Mute Call”. The system responds with “Resuming call”.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the in-vehicle Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Transfer Call.” The system responds with “Transferring call” and the audio will switch from the vehicle to the cell phone.

To Transfer Audio to the In-Vehicle Bluetooth System

The cellular phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the key is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY position.

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press for more than two seconds. The audio switches from the cell phone to the vehicle.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice Pass-Thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See the cell phone manufacturers user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature. This feature can be used to verbally access contacts stored in the cell phone.

1. Press and hold for two seconds. The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth”. The system responds with “Bluetooth ready” followed by a tone.
3. Say “Voice”. The system responds with “OK, accessing <phone name>”.
   - The cell phone’s normal prompt messages will go through its cycle according to the phone’s operating instructions.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers and numbers stored as name tags during a call. This is used when calling a menu driven phone system. Account numbers can be programmed into the phonebook for retrieval during menu driven calls.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sending a Number During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial”. The system responds with “Say a number to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the number to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the number it responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the number properly, it responds “Dial Number, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the number is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending Number” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Sending a Stored Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds with “Ready” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Send name tag.” The system responds with “Say a name tag to send tones” followed by a tone.
3. Say the name tag to send.
   - If the system clearly recognizes the name tag it responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.
   - If the system is not sure it recognized the name tag properly, it responds “Dial <name tag>, Please say yes or no?” followed by a tone. If the name tag is correct, say “Yes”. The system responds with “OK, Sending <name tag>” and the dial tones are sent and the call continues.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all saved name tags in the phonebook and phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see the above sections on Deleting a Paired Phone and Deleting Name Tags.

Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

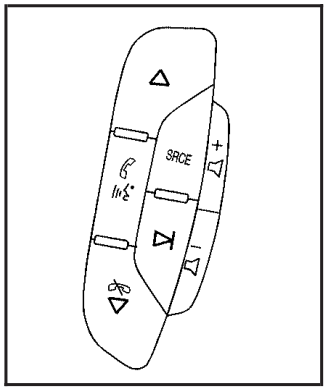
Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of the vehicle's radio by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The radio does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio Steering Wheel Controls



Vehicles with audio steering wheel controls could differ depending on the vehicle's options. Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

△ **(Next):** Press to go to the next radio station stored as a favorite, or the next track if a CD is playing.

(Previous/End): Press to go to the previous radio station stored as a favorite, the next track if a CD is playing, to reject an incoming call, or end a current call.

(Mute/Push to Talk): Press to silence the vehicle speakers only. Press again to turn the sound on. For vehicles with OnStar® or Bluetooth® systems, press and hold for longer than two seconds to interact with those systems. See *OnStar® System on page 2-33* and *Bluetooth® on page 3-82* for more information.

SRCE (Source): Press to switch between the radio (AM, FM, XM), CD, and auxiliary input jack.

+ – (Volume): Press to increase or to decrease the radio volume.

(Seek): Press to go to the next radio station while in AM, FM, or XM™. Press to go to the next track or chapter while sourced to the CD. Press the if multiple discs are loaded to go to the next disc while sourced to a CD player.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. For better radio reception, most AM radio stations boost the power levels during the day, and then reduce these levels during the night. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM Stereo

FM signals only reach about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast-to-coast in the 48 contiguous United States, and in Canada. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the XM signal for a period of time.

Cellular Phone Usage

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with the vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery, or simply having the phone on. This interference causes an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If static is received while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window defogger, located in the rear window. Make sure that the inside surface of the rear window is not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. For proper radio reception, the antenna connector needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

If a cellular telephone antenna needs to be attached to the glass, make sure that the grid lines for the AM-FM antenna are not damaged. There is enough space between the grid lines to attach a cellular telephone antenna without interfering with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of the vehicle. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear radio reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, the performance of the XM system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle 4-2
- Driving for Better Fuel Economy 4-2
- Defensive Driving 4-2
- Drunk Driving 4-3
- Control of a Vehicle 4-3
- Braking 4-4
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-5
- Braking in Emergencies 4-6
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 4-6
- Traction Control System (TCS) 4-8
- Steering 4-9
- Off-Road Recovery 4-11
- Passing 4-11
- Loss of Control 4-11
- Driving at Night 4-13
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 4-14
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip 4-15
- Highway Hypnosis 4-15
- Hill and Mountain Roads 4-16
- Winter Driving 4-17
- If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-19
- Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 4-20
- Loading the Vehicle 4-20

Towing 4-26
- Towing Your Vehicle 4-26
- Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-26
- Towing a Trailer 4-28

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Driving, the Road, and the Vehicle

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control, if equipped.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear your safety belt — See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-13*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drunk Driving

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle: judgment, muscular coordination, vision, and attentiveness.

Police records show that almost 40 percent of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 17,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with about 250,000 people injured.

For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological, and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive.

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

Control of a Vehicle

The following three systems help to control the vehicle while driving — brakes, steering, and accelerator. At times, as when driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. Meaning, you can lose control of the vehicle. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking

See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-30*.

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination, and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs, and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between the vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road, whether it is pavement or gravel; the condition of the road, whether it is wet, dry, or icy; tire tread; the condition of the brakes; the weight of the vehicle; and the amount of brake force applied.

Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. The brakes might not have time to cool between hard stops. The brakes will wear out much faster with a lot of heavy braking. Keeping pace with the traffic and allowing realistic following distances eliminates a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

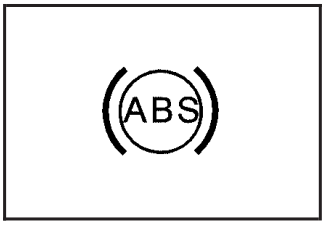
If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. If the brakes are pumped, the pedal could get harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will still be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The vehicle might have the Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.



If the vehicle has ABS, this warning light on the instrument panel cluster comes on briefly when the vehicle is started.

When the engine is started, or when the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves or pulses a little. This is normal.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help the driver steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let antilock work. A slight brake pedal pulsation might be felt or some noise might be heard, but this is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking in Emergencies

At some time, nearly every driver gets into a situation that requires hard braking.

If the vehicle has ABS, it allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time. However, if the vehicle does not have ABS, the first reaction — to hit the brake pedal hard and hold it down — might be the wrong thing to do. The wheels can stop rolling. Once they do, the vehicle cannot respond to the driver's steering. Momentum will carry it in whatever direction it was headed when the wheels stopped rolling. That could be off the road, into the very thing the driver was trying to avoid, or into traffic.

If the vehicle does not have ABS, use a "squeeze" braking technique. This gives maximum braking while maintaining steering control. Do this by pushing on the brake pedal with steadily increasing pressure.

In an emergency, you will probably want to squeeze the brakes hard without locking the wheels. If you hear or feel the wheels sliding, ease off the brake pedal. This helps retain steering control. With ABS, it is different. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-5*.

In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

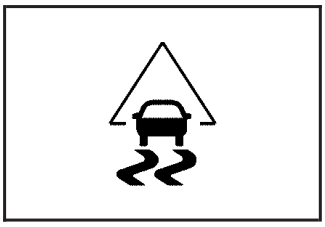
Your vehicle may have an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start your vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure there are no problems. You may hear or feel the system working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with your vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 20 mph (32 km/h).

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the ESC/TCS light will be on solid, and the SERVICE STABILITRAK message will be displayed.

For more information, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-42*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



This light will flash on the instrument panel cluster when the ESC system is both on and activated.

You may also feel or hear the system working; this is normal.

When the light is on solid and the SERVICE STABILITRAK message is displayed, the system will not assist the driver in maintaining directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is automatically enabled whenever you start your vehicle. To assist the driver with vehicle directional control, especially in slippery road conditions, you should always leave the system on. But, you can turn ESC off if you ever need to.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system begins to assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle, the ESC/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to use cruise again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 3-9*.

The ESC/TCS button is located on the instrument panel.

The traction control system can be turned off or back on by pressing the ESC/TCS button. To disable both traction control and ESC, press and hold the button briefly.

When the ESC system is turned off, the TRACTION CONTROL OFF message will appear, and the ESC/TCS light will be on solid to warn the driver that both traction control and ESC are disabled.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if your vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” your vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-19*.

ESC may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The SERVICE STABILITRAK message and the ESC/TCS light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESC is disabled and requires service.

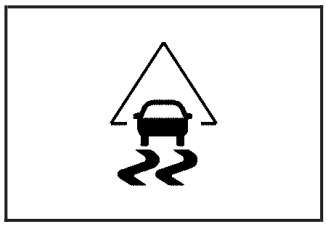
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the problem does not clear after restarting the vehicle, you should see your dealer/retailer for service. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect your vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

Traction Control System (TCS)

The vehicle may have a Traction Control System (TCS) that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that one or both of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system reduces engine power and may also upshift the transmission and apply the front brakes to limit wheel spin.

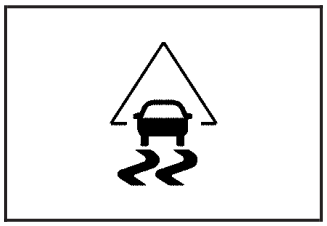


This light will flash when the TCS is limiting wheel spin.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

If cruise control is being used when TCS begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. Cruise control may be reengaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 3-9*.

The TCS operates in all transmission shift lever positions. But the system can upshift the transmission only as high as the shift lever position chosen, so use the lower gears only when necessary. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-24*.



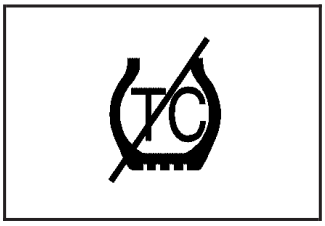
When the system is on, this warning light comes on and stays on if there is a problem.

A SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL message also appears on the DIC. When this warning light is on, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, TCS should always be left on. But the system can be turned off if needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the system off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud or snow and rocking the vehicle is required. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-20* and *If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow on page 4-19* for more information.



To turn the system on or off, press the Traction Control button located on the instrument panel.

When the system is turned off, the traction control warning light comes on and TRACTION CONTROL OFF appears on the DIC. If the traction control system is limiting wheel spin when the button is pressed to turn the system off, the warning light comes on and the system will turn off right away.

Press the Traction Control button again to turn the system back on. The Traction Control warning light should go off.

Adding non-dealer/non-retailer accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for more information.

Steering

Power Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, the vehicle can be steered but it will take more effort.

Steering Tips

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

Traction in a curve depends on the condition of the tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and vehicle speed. While in a curve, speed is the one factor that can be controlled.

If there is a need to reduce speed, do it before entering the curve, while the front wheels are straight.

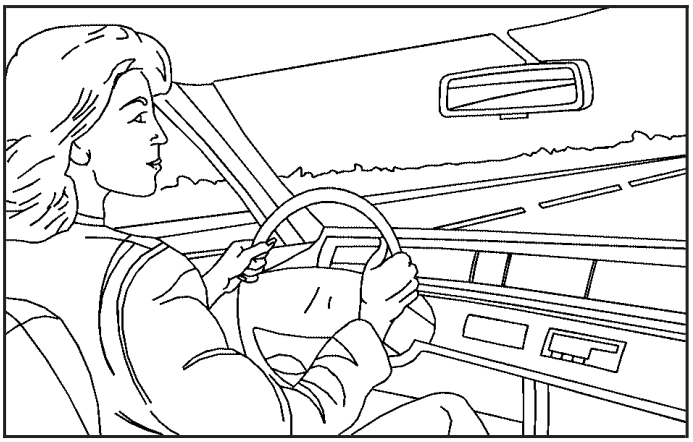
Try to adjust the speed so you can drive through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. These problems can be avoided by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot stop in time because there is no room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

The vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply the brakes — but, unless the vehicle has antilock brakes, not enough to lock the wheels. See *Braking on page 4-4*. It is better to remove as much speed as possible from a collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.



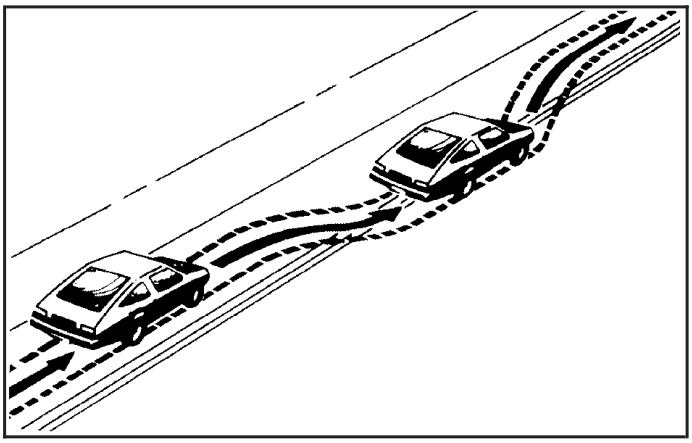
An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, it can be turned a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Off-Road Recovery

The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that the vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. Turn the steering wheel 3 to 5 inches, 8 to 13 cm, (about one-eighth turn) until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

Passing another vehicle on a two-lane road can be dangerous. To reduce the risk of danger while passing:

- Look down the road, to the sides, and to crossroads for situations that might affect a successful pass. If in doubt, wait.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings, and lines that could indicate a turn or an intersection. Never cross a solid or double-solid line on your side of the lane.
- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass. Doing so can reduce your visibility.
- Wait your turn to pass a slow vehicle.
- When you are being passed, ease to the right.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to the vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, the wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

If the vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, the vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until the vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

If the vehicle has the Antilock Brake System (ABS), remember: It helps avoid only the braking skid. If the vehicle does not have ABS, then in a braking skid, where the wheels are no longer rolling, release enough pressure on the brakes to get the wheels rolling again. This restores steering control. Push the brake pedal down steadily when you have to stop suddenly. As long as the wheels are rolling, you will have steering control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving at Night

Night driving is more dangerous than day driving because some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Night driving tips include:

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Reduce headlamp glare by adjusting the inside rearview mirror.
- Slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles because headlamps can only light up so much road ahead.
- Watch for animals.
- When tired, pull off the road.
- Do not wear sunglasses.
- Avoid staring directly into approaching headlamps.
- Keep the windshield and all glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out.
- Keep your eyes moving, especially during turns or curves.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But, as we get older, these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver might need at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause your vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under your vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-53*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

To prepare your vehicle for a long trip, consider having it serviced by your dealer/retailer before departing.

Things to check on your own include:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Reservoir full? Windows clean — inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* In good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* All levels checked?
- *Lamps:* Do they all work and are lenses clean?
- *Tires:* Are treads good? Are tires inflated to recommended pressure?
- *Weather and Maps:* Safe to travel? Have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park your vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Going down steep or long hills, shift to a lower gear.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, the brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. The brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down and they could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear when going downhill.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Top of hills: Be alert — something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 32°F (0°C) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

If the vehicle has the *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 4-8*, it improves the ability to accelerate on slippery roads, but slow down and adjust your driving to the road conditions. When driving through deep snow, turn off the traction control system to help maintain vehicle motion at lower speeds.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-5* improves vehicle stability during hard stops on a slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control, if equipped, on slippery surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be in a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use the *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-8*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

- Open a window about two inches (5 cm) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See Climate Control System in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 2-30*.

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust.

Run the engine for short periods only as needed to keep warm, but be careful.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If Your Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-20*.

If the vehicle has a traction system, it can often help to free a stuck vehicle. Refer to the vehicle's traction system in the Index. If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

For information about using tire chains on the vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-74*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-26*.

Loading the Vehicle

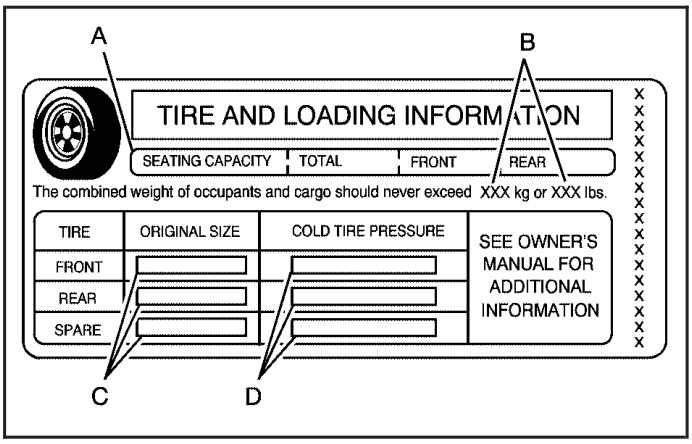
It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Vehicle Certification label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The Tire and Loading Information label lists the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds. The vehicle capacity weight includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options.

The Tire and Loading Information label also lists the tire size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation, see *Tires on page 5-53* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle, see "Certification Label" later in this section.

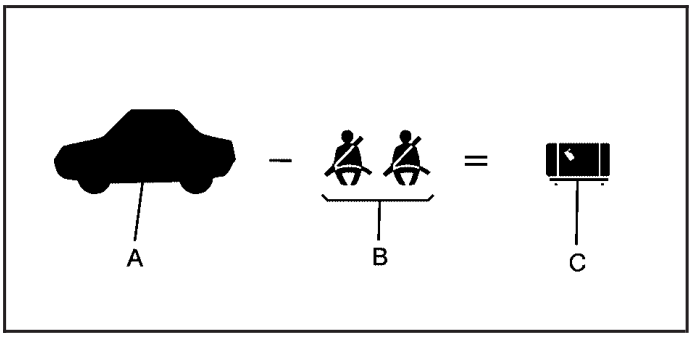
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

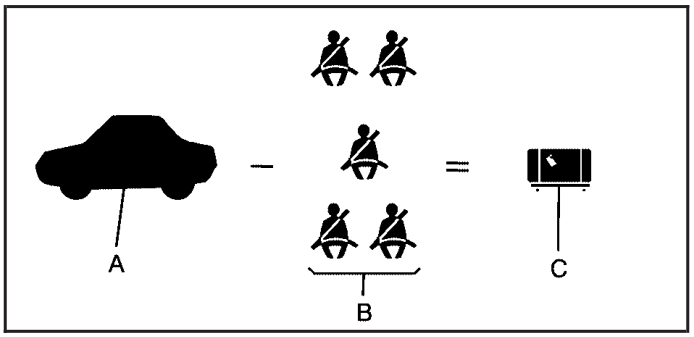
1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity for your vehicle.

If your vehicle can tow a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-28* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Example 1

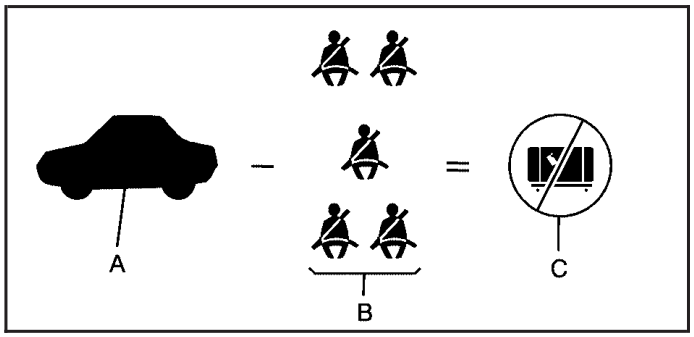


Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (340 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

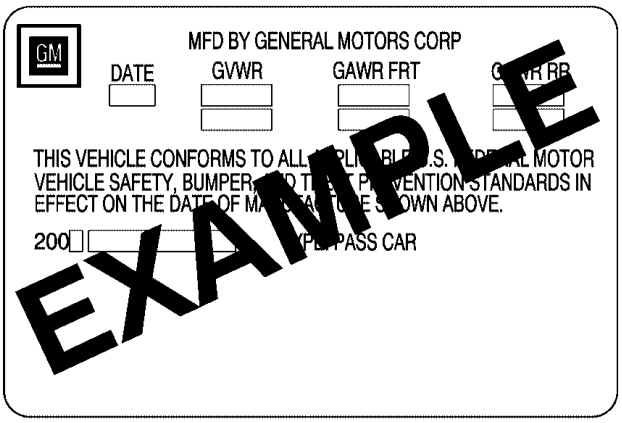


Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Maximum Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about your vehicle's maximum vehicle capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's maximum vehicle capacity weight.

Certification Label



A vehicle specific Certification label is found on the rear edge of the driver's door.

The label shows the gross weight capacity of your vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

If the vehicle is going to carry a heavy load, spread it out. See “Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit” earlier in this section.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on the vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of the vehicle.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

If things like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else are put inside the vehicle, they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the trunk of your vehicle. In a trunk, put them as far forward as you can. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

To avoid damage, the disabled vehicle should be towed with all four wheels off the ground. Consult your dealer/retailer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-8*.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motorhome, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

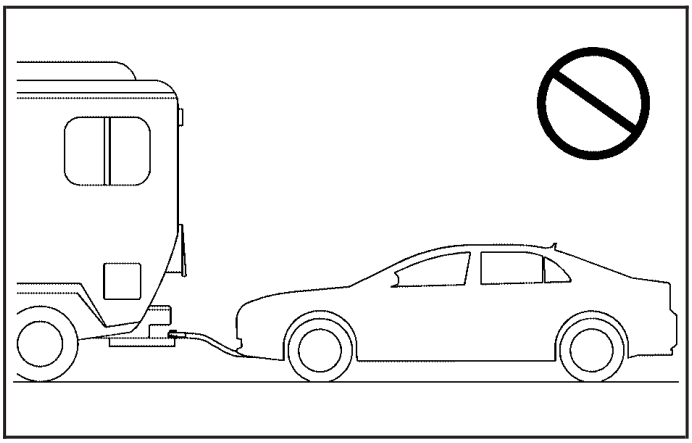
Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle – such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer’s recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer/retailer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed. See *Before Leaving on a Long Trip on page 4-15*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

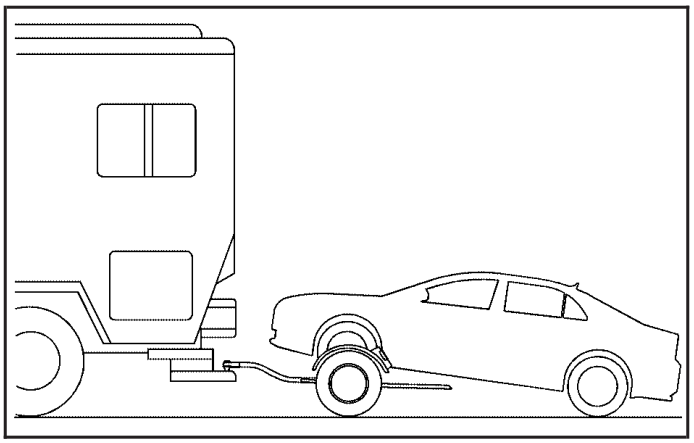
Dinghy Towing



Notice: **If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.**

The vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If the vehicle must be towed, a dolly should be used. See “Dolly Towing” that follows for more information.

Dolly Towing



Use the following procedure to dolly tow the vehicle from the front:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer’s instructions.
2. Drive the front wheels onto the dolly.
3. Shift the transmission to P (Park).
4. Firmly set the parking brake.
5. Use an adequate clamping device designed for towing to ensure that the front wheels are locked into the straight position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Secure the vehicle to the dolly following the manufacturer's instructions.
7. Release the parking brake only after the vehicle being towed is firmly attached to the towing vehicle.
8. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF and remove the key.

Towing a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer/retailer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage the vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section and see your dealer/retailer for important information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.**

The vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, read the information in "Weight of the Trailer" that appears later in this section. Trailering is different than just driving the vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

The following information has many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for the safety of the driver and the passengers. So please read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, axles, wheel assemblies and tires are forced to work harder against the drag of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads, generating extra heat. The trailer also adds considerably to wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pulling A Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure the rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you will be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 1,000 miles (1600 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, transmission or other parts could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- Obey speed limit restrictions when towing a trailer. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 55 mph (90 km/h), to save wear on the vehicle's parts.
- Do not tow a trailer when the outside temperature is above 100°F (38°C).

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the total weight on the vehicle's tires.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg). But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See "Weight of the Trailer Tongue" later in this section for more information.

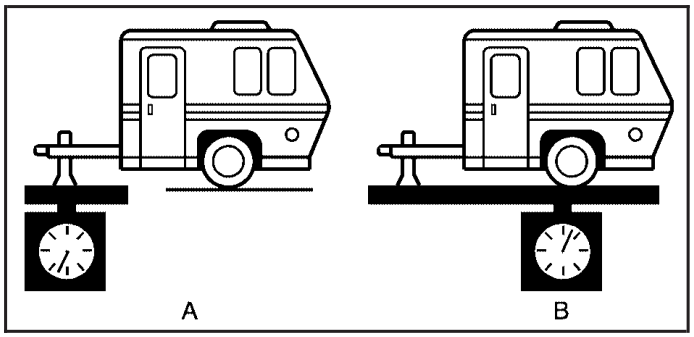
Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer/retailer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices on page 7-6* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20* for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



Using a weight-carrying hitch, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10 to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Certification/Tire label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed. Here are some rules to follow:

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If there are, then be sure to seal the holes later when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-30* in the Index for more information.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains and do not attach them to the bumper. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not try to tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system. If you do, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

Does your trailer have its own brakes? Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you will be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Get to know the rig before setting out for the open road. Get acquainted with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This checks the electrical connection at the same time.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. For this reason you may think other drivers are seeing the signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Notice: **Do not tow on steep continuous grades exceeding 6 miles (9.6 km). Extended, higher than normal engine and transmission temperatures may result and damage the vehicle. Frequent stops are very important to allow the engine and transmission to cool.**

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce the vehicle's speed to around 45 mph (70 km/h) to reduce the possibility of the engine and the transmission overheating. If the engine does overheat, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-31*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   - start the engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, belts, cooling system and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-31*.

Changing a Tire When Trailer Towing

If the vehicle gets a flat tire while towing a trailer, be sure to secure the trailer and disconnect it from the vehicle before changing the tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Service 5-3
- Accessories and Modifications 5-3
- California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4
- California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
- Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
- Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 5-5

Fuel 5-5
- Gasoline Octane 5-5
- Gasoline Specifications 5-6
- California Fuel 5-6
- Additives 5-6
- Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) 5-8
- Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-9
- Filling the Tank 5-10
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-12

Checking Things Under the Hood 5-12
- Hood Release 5-13
- Engine Compartment Overview 5-14
- Engine Oil 5-17
- Engine Oil Life System 5-20
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 5-21
- Automatic Transmission Fluid 5-24
- Cooling System 5-26
- Engine Coolant 5-28
- Pressure Cap 5-31
- Engine Overheating 5-31
- Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-34
- Power Steering Fluid 5-34
- Windshield Washer Fluid 5-35
- Brakes 5-37
- Battery 5-40
- Jump Starting 5-40

Headlamp Aiming 5-45

Bulb Replacement 5-45
- Halogen Bulbs 5-45
- Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps 5-46
- Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps 5-49
- License Plate Lamp 5-51
- Replacement Bulbs 5-51

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-51

Tires 5-53
- Tire Sidewall Labeling 5-54
- Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-57
- Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-60
- Tire Pressure Monitor System 5-62

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 5-63
Tire Inspection and Rotation 5-67
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-68
Buying New Tires 5-69
Different Size Tires and Wheels 5-71
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-71
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-73
Wheel Replacement 5-73
Tire Chains 5-74
If a Tire Goes Flat 5-75
Changing a Flat Tire 5-76
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 5-79
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-85
Compact Spare Tire 5-88

Appearance Care 5-89
Interior Cleaning 5-89
Fabric/Carpet 5-90
Leather 5-91
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-91
Care of Safety Belts 5-92
Weatherstrips 5-92
Washing Your Vehicle 5-92
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-93
Finish Care 5-93
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-94
Aluminum Wheels 5-94
Tires 5-95
Sheet Metal Damage 5-95
Finish Damage 5-95
Underbody Maintenance 5-95
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-95

Vehicle Identification 5-96
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 5-96
Service Parts Identification Label 5-96

Electrical System 5-96
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-96
Headlamp Wiring 5-97
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-97
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-97
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-97
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-97
Underhood Fuse Block 5-98

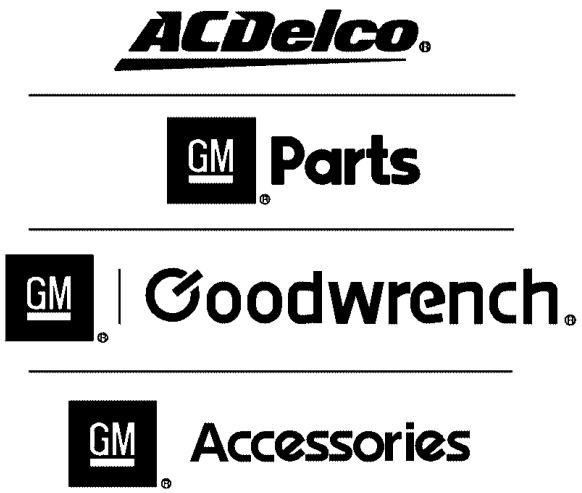
Capacities and Specifications 5-101

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer/retailer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:



Accessories and Modifications

When non-dealer/non-retailer accessories are added to the vehicle, they can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. Some of these accessories could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module modifications, are not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. Your GM dealer/retailer can accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories. When you go to your GM dealer/retailer and ask for GM Accessories, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM Accessories.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-72*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in remote keyless transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-71*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Record on page 6-15*.

Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle

Things added to the outside of the vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This can cause wind noise and can affect fuel economy and windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer/retailer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. To help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend the use of gasoline advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-96*.

If the vehicle has the 3.5L V6 engine (VIN Code K) or the 3.9L V6 engine (VIN Code M), you can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 5-8*. In all other engines, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

Gasoline Octane

For all vehicles except those with the 5.3L V8 engine (VIN Code C), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. If the octane rating is less than 87, you might notice an audible knocking noise when you drive, commonly referred to as spark knock. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has the 5.3L V8 engine (VIN Code C), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. You can also use regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but the vehicle's acceleration could be slightly reduced, and you might notice a slight audible knocking noise, commonly referred to as spark knock. If the octane is less than 87, you might notice a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you could damage the engine. If you are using gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher and you hear heavy knocking, the engine needs service.

Gasoline Specifications

At a minimum, gasoline should meet ASTM specification D 4814 in the United States or CAN/CGSB-3.5 or 3.511 in Canada. Some gasolines contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). We recommend against the use of gasolines containing MMT. See *Additives on page 5-6* for additional information.

California Fuel

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle might fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-36*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer/retailer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing the emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. To help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean, or if the vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, look for gasoline that is advertised as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline.

For customers who do not use TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline regularly, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS, added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help clean deposits from fuel injectors and intake valves. GM Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors.

Also, your dealer/retailer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines might be available in your area. We recommend that you use these gasolines, if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. We recommend against the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system could be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp might turn on. If this occurs, return to your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol)

The 8th digit of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies the vehicle's engine. The VIN is at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-96*.

If the vehicle has the 3.5L V6 engine (VIN Code K) or the 3.9L V6 engine (VIN Code M), you can use either unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel containing up to 85% ethanol (E85). See *Fuel on page 5-5*. In all other engines, use only the unleaded gasoline described under *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

Only vehicles that have the 3.5L V6 engine (VIN Code K) or the 3.9L V6 engine (VIN Code M) can use 85% ethanol fuel (E85). We encourage the use of E85 in vehicles that are designed to use it. The ethanol in E85 is a "renewable" fuel, meaning it is made from renewable sources such as corn and other crops.

Many service stations will not have an 85% ethanol fuel (E85) pump available. The U. S. Department of Energy has an alternative fuels website (www.eere.energy.gov/afdc/infrastructure/locator.html) that can help you find E85 fuel. Those stations that do have E85 should have a label indicating ethanol content. Do not use the fuel if the ethanol content is greater than 85%.

At a minimum, E85 should meet ASTM Specification D 5798. By definition, this means that fuel labeled E85 will have an ethanol content between 70% and 85%. Filling the fuel tank with fuel mixtures that do not meet ASTM specifications can affect driveability and could cause the malfunction indicator lamp to come on.

To ensure quick starts in the wintertime, the E85 fuel must be formulated properly for your climate according to ASTM specification D 5798. If you have trouble starting on E85, it could be because the E85 fuel is not properly formulated for your climate. If this happens, switching to gasoline or adding gasoline to the fuel tank can improve starting. For good starting and heater efficiency below 32°F (0°C), the fuel mix in the fuel tank should contain no more than 70% ethanol. It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible — do not add less than three gallons (11 L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least seven miles (11 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

E85 has less energy per gallon than gasoline, so you will need to refill the fuel tank more often when using E85 than when you are using gasoline. See *Filling the Tank on page 5-10*.

Notice: **Some additives are not compatible with E85 fuel and can harm the vehicle's fuel system. Do not add anything to E85. Damage caused by additives would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Notice: **This vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.**

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

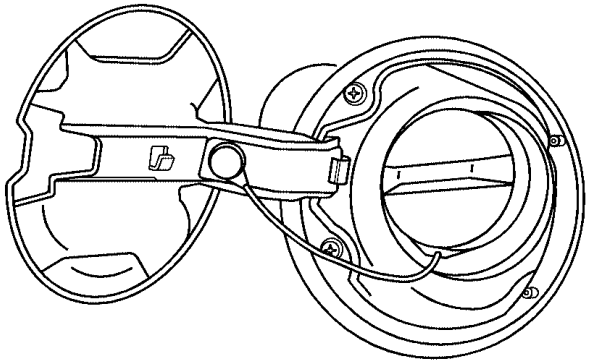
To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Filling the Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off the engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling the vehicle. Do not use cellular phones. Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling the vehicle. This is against the law in some places. Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.



The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle. If the vehicle has E85 fuel capability, the fuel cap will be yellow and state that E85 or gasoline can be used. See *Fuel E85 (85% Ethanol) on page 5-8*.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

While refueling, hang the tethered fuel cap on the hook on the inside of the fuel door.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-92*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-36*.

The TIGHTEN GAS CAP message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC) if the fuel cap is not properly installed. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer/retailer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-36*.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

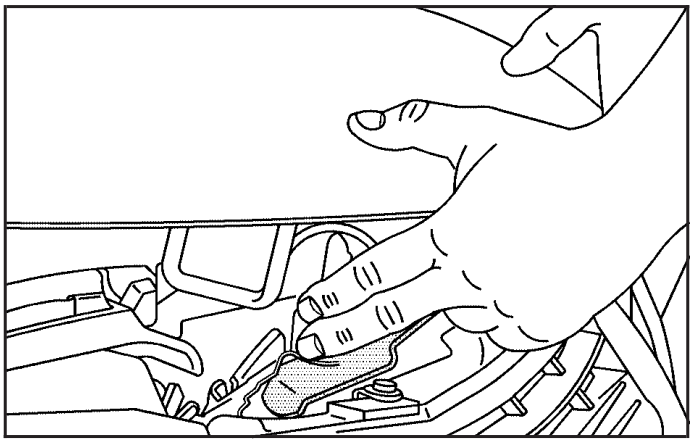
Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:

1. Pull the interior hood release handle with this symbol on it. It is located to the left of the parking brake pedal.



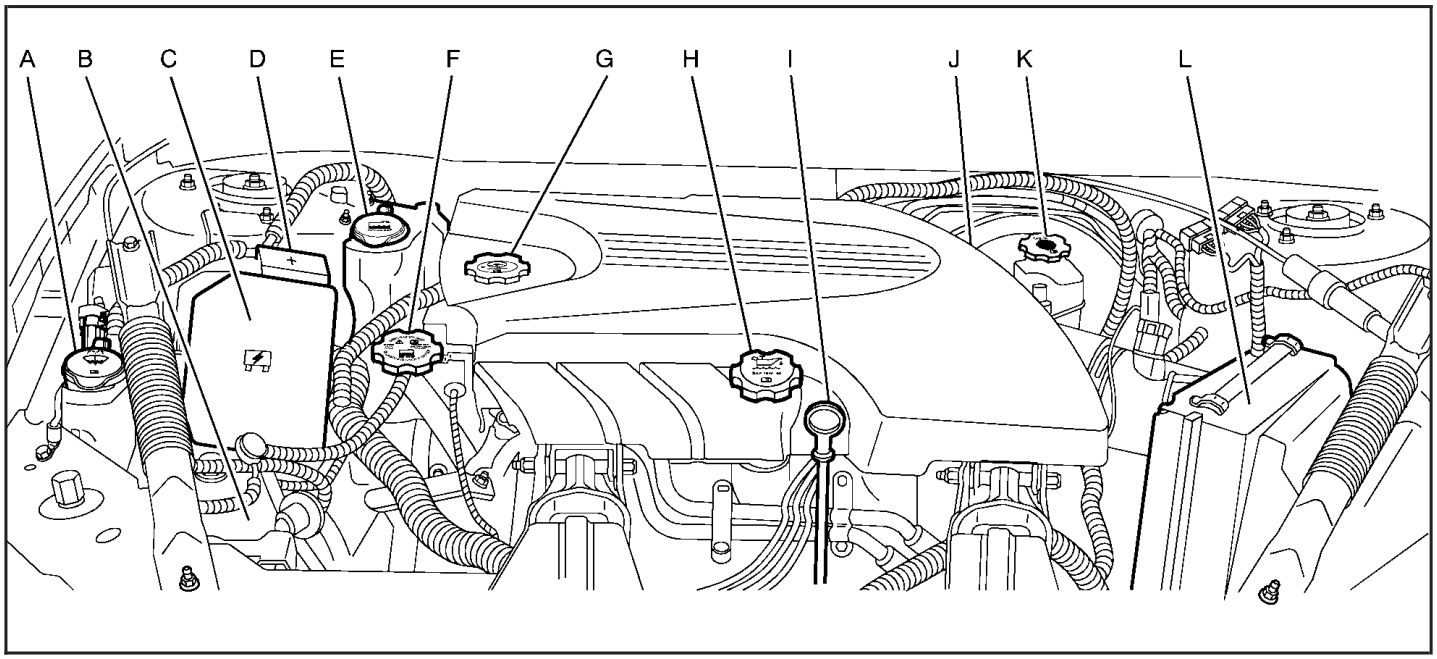
2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and release the secondary hood latch, located near the center of the hood front, by pushing the latch to the right.
3. Lift the hood.

Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull the hood down and close it firmly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 3.5L V6 engine (3.9L V6 similar), here is what you will see:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35*.

B. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-40*.

C. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-98*.

D. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

E. Coolant Recovery Tank. See “Checking Coolant” under *Cooling System on page 5-26*.

F. Pressure Cap. See *Pressure Cap on page 5-31*.

G. Power Steering Fluid Cap. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-34*.

H. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.

I. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.

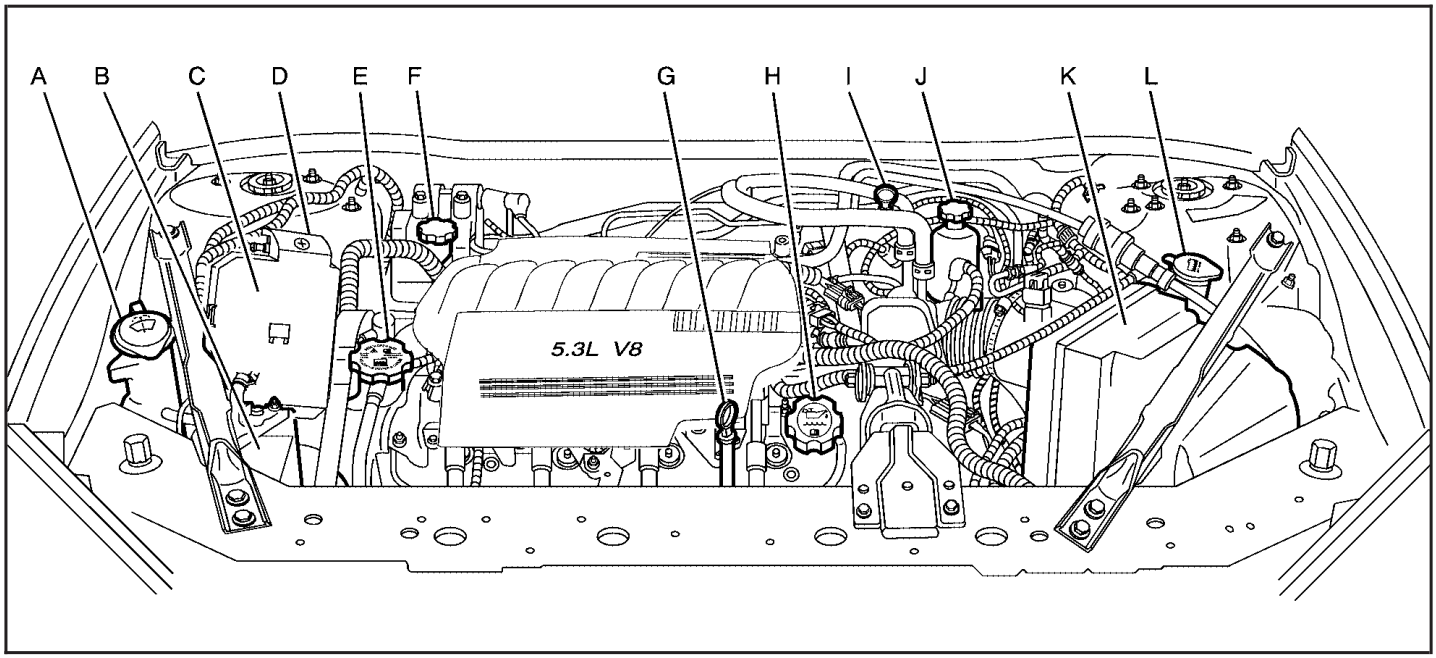
J. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick (Out of View). See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-24*.

K. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-37*.

L. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you open the hood on the 5.3L V8 engine, here is what you will see:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35*.

B. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-40*.

C. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-98*.

D. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40*.

E. Pressure Cap. See *Pressure Cap on page 5-31*.

F. Power Steering Fluid Cap. See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-34*.

G. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.

H. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.

I. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick. See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-24*.

J. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-37*.

K. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.

L. Coolant Recovery Tank. See “Checking Coolant” under *Cooling System on page 5-26*.

Engine Oil

Checking Engine Oil

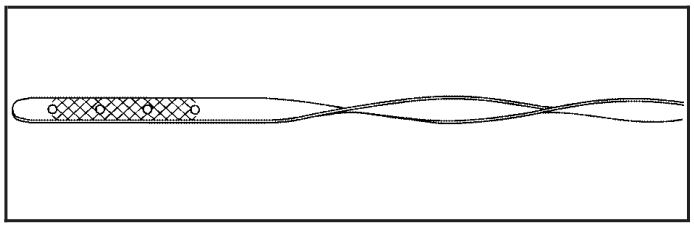
It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

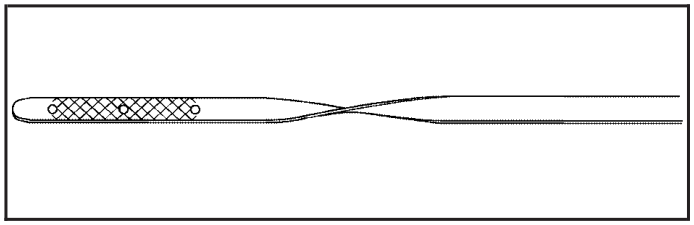
1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When to Add Engine Oil



V6 Engine



V8 Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add at least one quart/liter of the recommended oil. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged.**

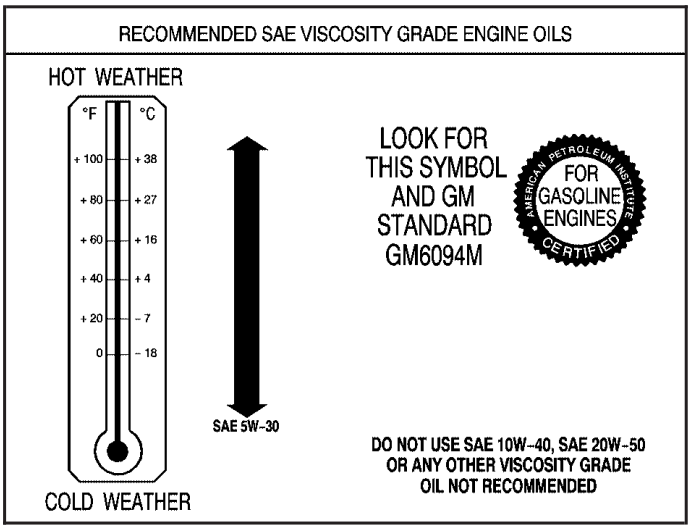
See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range in the cross-hatched area. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for three things:



- GM6094M

  Use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.

- SAE 5W-30

  SAE 5W-30 is best for the vehicle. These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

- American Petroleum Institute (API) starburst symbol

Oils meeting these requirements should have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Notice: **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Cold Temperature Operation

If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 engine oil. Both provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. Always use an oil that meets the required specification, GM6094M. See “What Kind of Engine Oil to Use” for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Additives / Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service people who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change the engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Whenever the oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where the oil is changed prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message being turned on, reset the system.

Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the Engine Oil Life System:

1. Display the OIL LIFE REMAINING on the DIC.
2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button on the DIC for more than five seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the Engine Oil Life System has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is located in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

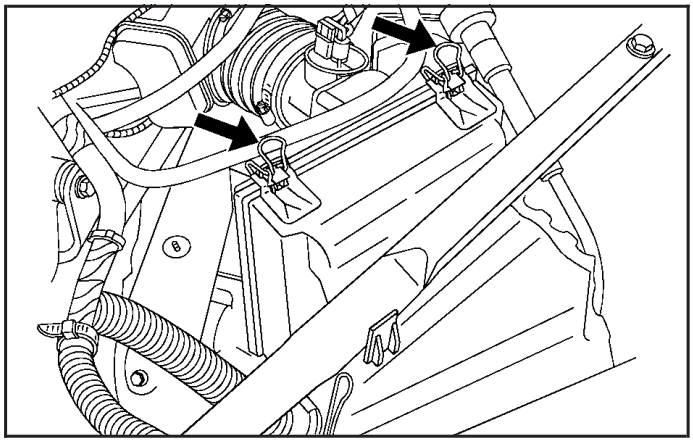
When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after each 50,000 mile (80 000 km) interval. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/ Filter

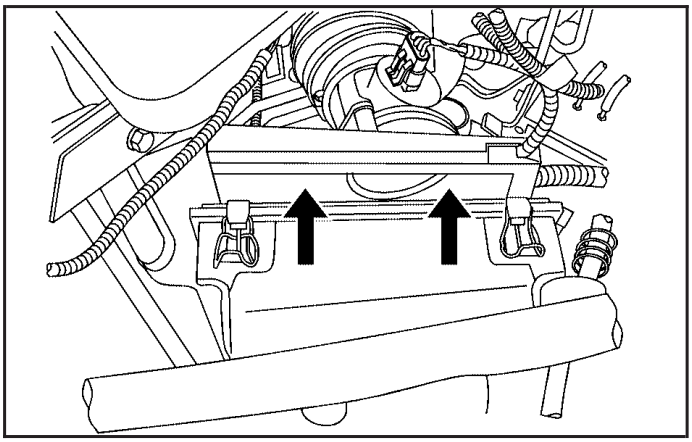
To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter do the following:



1. Lift the filter cover tabs on top of the engine air cleaner/filter housing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Push the filter cover housing toward the engine.
3. Pull out the filter.
4. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
5. To reinstall the cover, position the tabs through the hinges on the housing.
6. Push the cover tabs on top of the housing to lock the cover in place.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Notice: **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into the engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change Automatic Transmission Fluid

A good time to check your automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Additional Required Services on page 6-6*, and be sure to use the transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealer/retailer service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine parts or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to drive longer.

Checking the Fluid Level

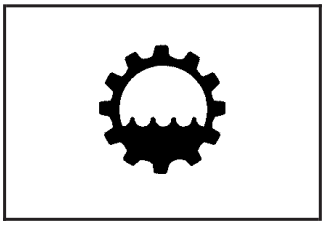
Prepare your vehicle as follows:

1. Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
2. With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in P (Park).
3. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in P (Park).
4. Let the engine run at idle for three to five minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:

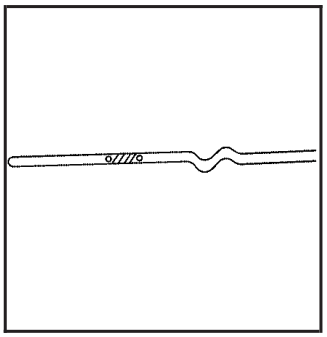
1. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.



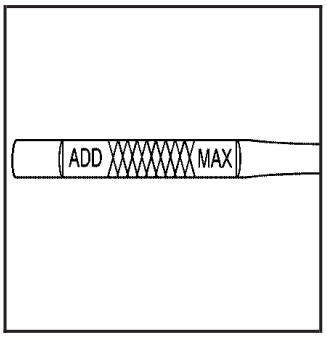
The transmission fluid dipstick handle is the black loop with this symbol on it. It is located near the rear of the engine compartment.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.

2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.



V6 Engines



5.3L V8 Engine

3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the cross-hatched area.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Add Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level into the cross-hatched area on the dipstick.

1. Pull out the dipstick.
2. Using a long-neck funnel, add enough fluid at the dipstick hole to bring it to the proper level.

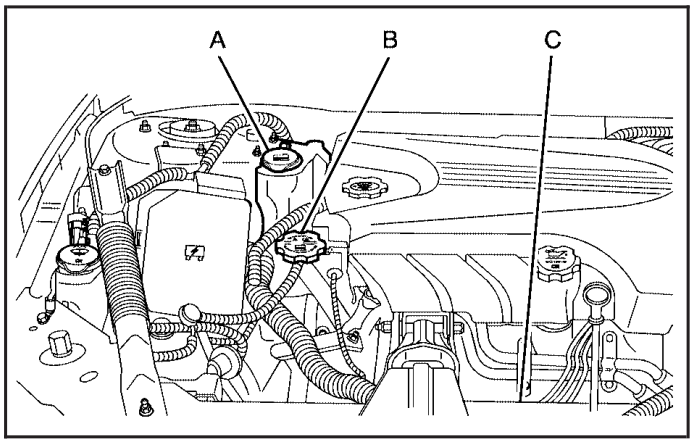
   It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). Do not overfill.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the automatic transmission fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

3. After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under "How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid," earlier in this section.
4. When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way.

Cooling System

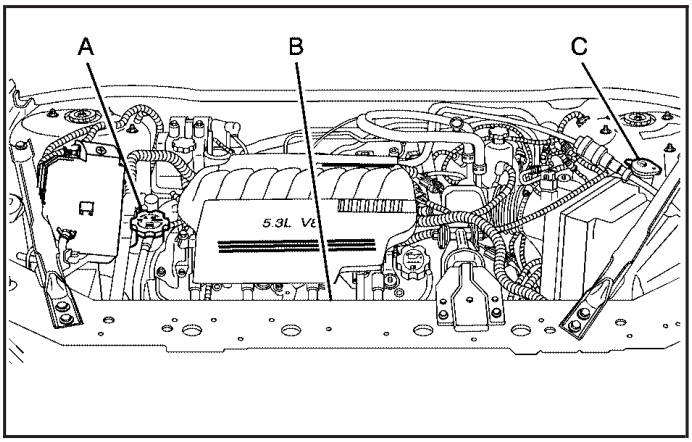
The Cooling System allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



3.5L V6 Engine shown, 3.9L Engine similar

A. Coolant Recovery Tank
B. Pressure Cap
C. Electric Engine Cooling Fans

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5.3L V8 Engine

A. Pressure Cap
B. Electric Engine Cooling Fans
C. Coolant Recovery Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in the vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-31*

What to Use

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Notice: **If an improper coolant mixture is used, the engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts.**

Notice: **If extra inhibitors and/or additives are used in the vehicle's cooling system, the vehicle could be damaged. Use only the proper mixture of the engine coolant listed in this manual for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant recovery tank. If the coolant inside the coolant recovery tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the COLD FILL line, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant recovery tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done. See Engine Coolant Engine Coolant for more information.

If your vehicle has one of the V6 engines, the coolant recovery tank is located in the rear of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. If your vehicle has the 5.3L V8 engine, the coolant recovery tank is located in the rear of the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14*.

When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be at or above the COLD FILL line on the coolant recovery tank. To check the coolant level, look for the COLD FILL line on the side of the coolant recovery tank that faces the engine. If the level is not correct, there may be a leak in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Recovery Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

Notice: **This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.**

If coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture at the coolant recovery tank.

When the coolant level in the coolant recovery tank is at the COLD FILL line, start the vehicle.

If the overheat warning continues, there is one more thing you can try. You can add the proper coolant mixture directly to the cooling system through the coolant fill neck on the engine, but be sure the system is cool before you do it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Add Coolant to the Radiator

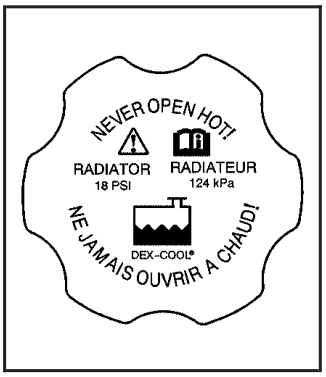
⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

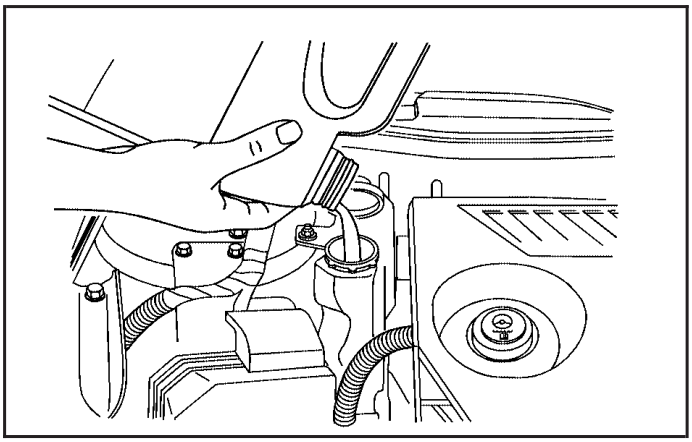
Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

If coolant is needed, add the proper mixture directly to the radiator, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.



1. You can remove the pressure cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap and upper radiator hose is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise.
   If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means that there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap and remove it.
3. Fill the cooling system with the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture, up to the base of the filler neck. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-28* Engine Coolant for more information about the proper coolant mixture. Rinse or wipe any spilled coolant from the engine and the compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Then fill the coolant recovery tank to the COLD FILL line.
5. Install the coolant recovery tank cap and the pressure cap. After a day or two of driving, when the engine is cold, check the coolant level in the recovery tank. If it is low, refill it to the COLD FILL line.

If the coolant in the recovery tank is constantly low, you should have a dealer/retailer service department inspect the vehicle for leaks.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Pressure Cap

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of engine overheating.

There is a coolant temperature gage and a warning light on the instrument panel that indicate an overheated engine condition. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-34* Engine Coolant Temperature Gage and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light on page 3-34* Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light.

In addition, you will find an ENGINE OVERHEATED IDLE ENGINE and an ENGINE OVERHEATED STOP ENGINE message displayed on the vehicle's Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* DIC Warnings and Messages for more information.

You may decide not to lift the hood when this warning appears, but instead get service help right away. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-8*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you do decide to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Engine damage from running the engine without coolant is not covered by the warranty.**

Notice: **If the engine catches fire while driving with no coolant, the vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-34* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

If Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the vehicles engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-34* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If No Steam Is Coming From The Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gage is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slow for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the car in front of you. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down. Also, see ‘‘Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode’’ later in this section.

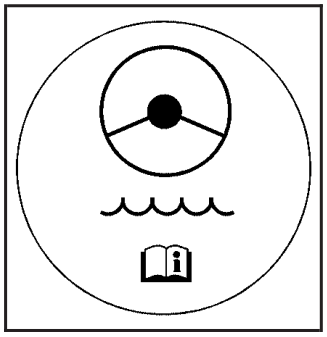
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

This emergency operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency situation. If an overheated engine condition exists, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a significant loss in power and engine performance. The coolant temperature gage will indicate an overheat condition exists. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.**

Power Steering Fluid



The power steering fluid reservoir is located toward the rear of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The fluid level should be somewhere within the cross-hatched area on the dipstick. If the fluid is at the ADD mark, you should add fluid.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*. Always use the proper fluid.

Notice: **Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damages may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.**

Windshield Washer Fluid

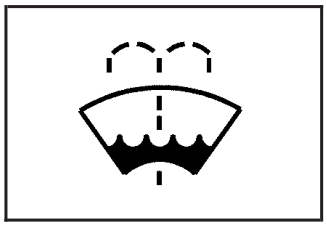
What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Washer Fluid

A WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message will be displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC) when you need to add windshield washer fluid to your vehicle. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49* for more information.



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.

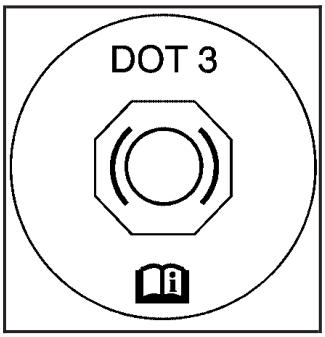
Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage the vehicle's windshield washer system and paint.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brakes

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ CAUTION:

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-30*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What to Add

Use only new DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-92*.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake Wear

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer/retailer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced — for example, when the brake linings wear down and new ones are installed — be sure to get new approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for the vehicle, the balance between the front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Battery

This vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, see your dealer/retailer for one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-40* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: If the vehicle is driven infrequently, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This helps keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: For extended storage of the vehicle, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger. This helps maintain the charge of the battery over an extended period of time.

Jump Starting

If your vehicle's battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the warranty.**

Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

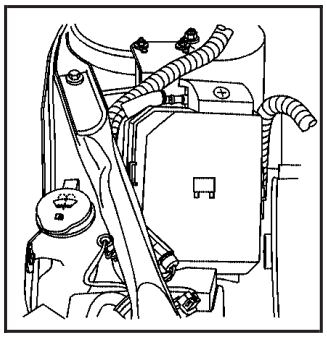
   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in N (Neutral) before setting the parking brake.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notice: **If you leave the radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the warranty. Always turn off the radio and other accessories when jump starting the vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save the radio!
4. Open the hoods and locate the batteries. Find the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations on each vehicle.

   You will not need to access your battery for jump starting. Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal for that purpose. The remote positive (+) terminal is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle, on the underhood fuse block. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.



To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, remove the fuse block cover. You should always use the remote positive (+) terminal instead of the positive (+) terminal on the battery.

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–), or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too. And do not connect the negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

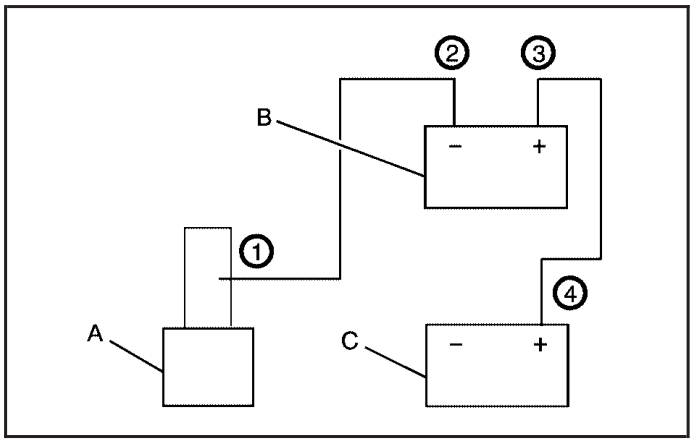
6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal location of the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal location of the vehicle with the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal location of the vehicle with the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.
9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal
B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal and Remote Negative (–) Terminals
C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles, do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the fuse block cover to its original position.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment.

However, if your vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low-beam headlamps may be necessary if oncoming drivers flash their high-beam headlamps at you (for vertical aim).

If the headlamps need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that you take the vehicle to your dealer/retailer for service.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-51*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer/retailer.

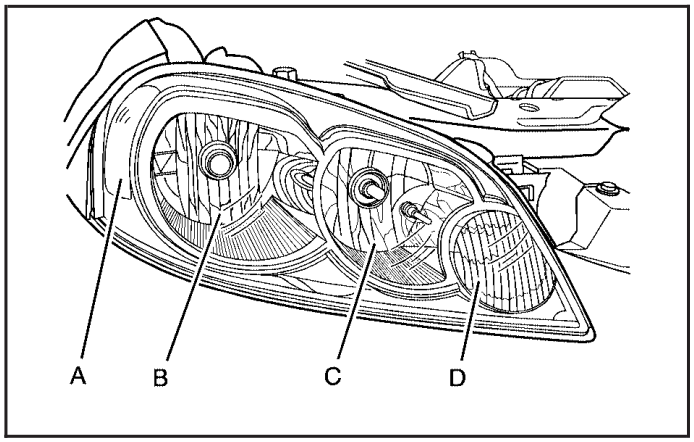
Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

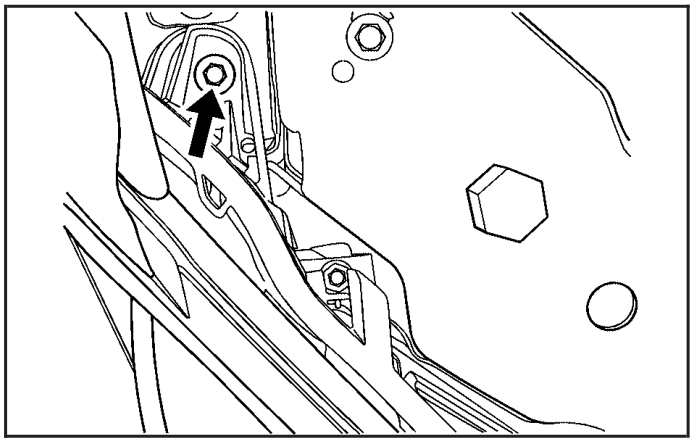
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps



A. Sidemarker
B. Low-Beam Headlamp
C. High-Beam Headlamp
D. Parking/Turn Signal Lamp

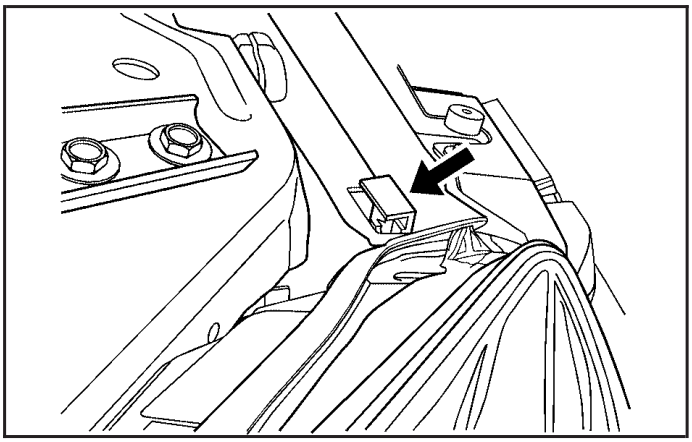
To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. See *Hood Release on page 5-13*.

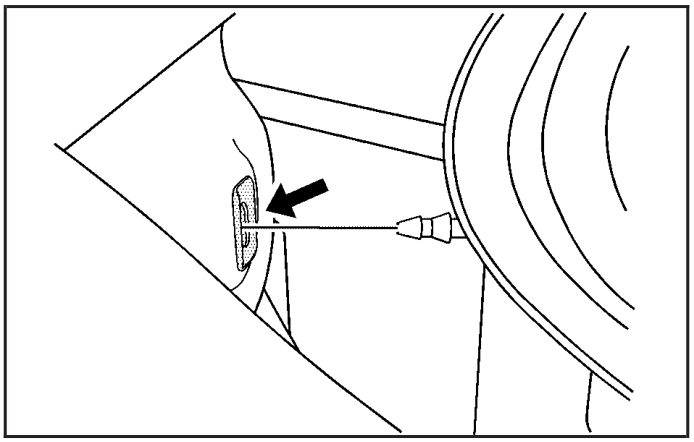


2. Remove the screw from the headlamp assembly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

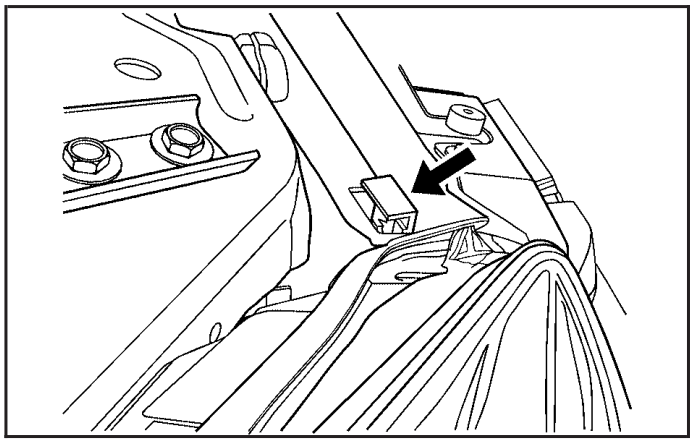


3. Pull up on the plastic headlamp retainer and remove it.
4. Pull the headlamp assembly away from the vehicle and remove the electrical connector.
5. Remove the round dust caps to gain access to the bulbs.
6. Turn the old bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the retaining ring by pulling it away from the headlamp.
7. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by raising the lock tab and pulling the connector away from the bulb's base.
8. Install the electrical connector to the bulb.
9. Install the new bulb by inserting the smallest tab on the bulb base into the matching notch in the retaining ring. Turn the bulb a quarter-turn clockwise until it stops.
10. Reinstall the dust caps.

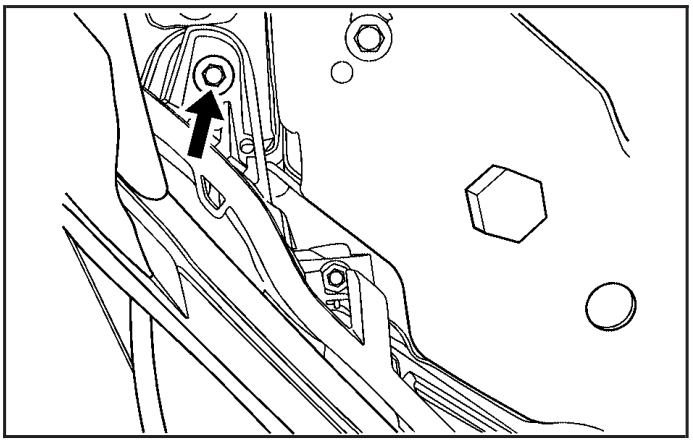


11. Push the headlamp assembly toward the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



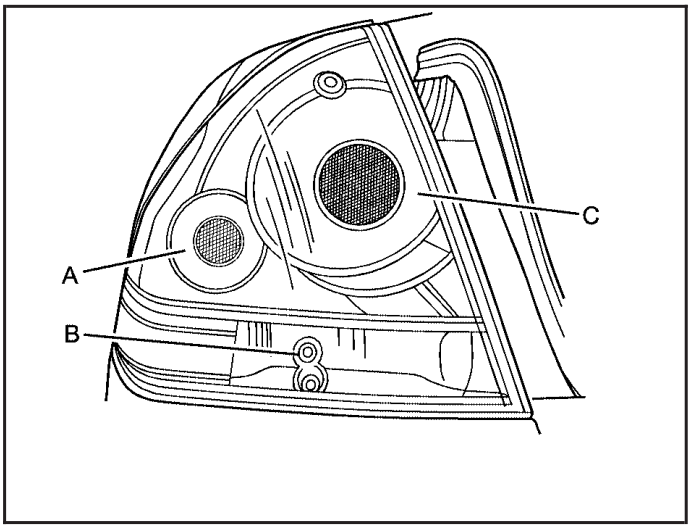
12. Push down on the plastic headlamp retainer to reinstall it.



13. Reinstall the screw from the headlamp assembly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

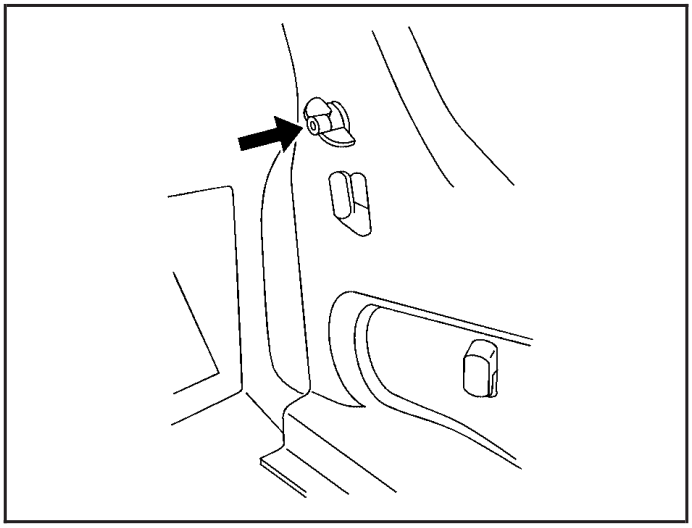
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps



A. Rear Sidemarker Lamp
B. Back-up Lamp
C. Stoplamp/Taillamp/Turn Signal

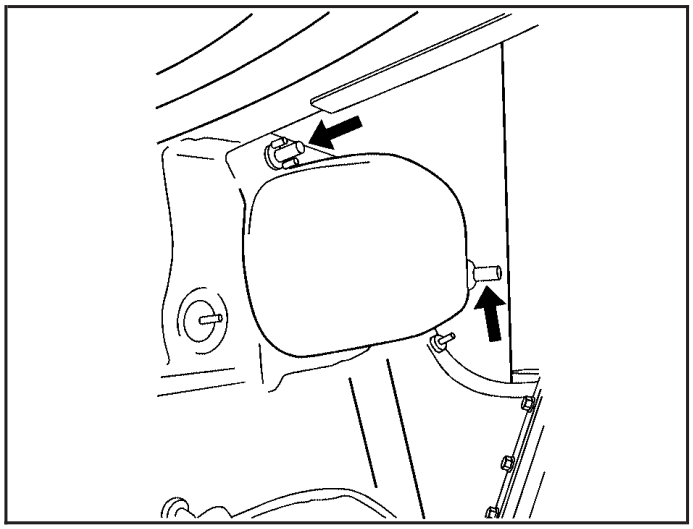
To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-12*.
2. Remove the convenience net. Unhook the net from the upper wing nut.



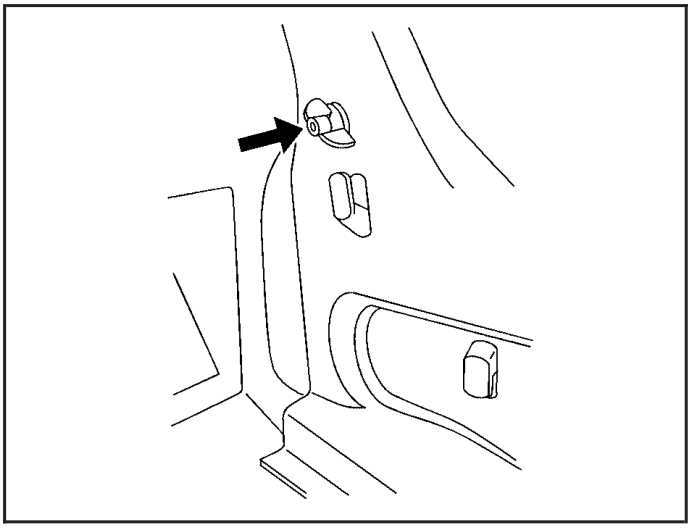
3. Turn the upper wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Pull the carpet away from the rear of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Turn the two hex nuts counterclockwise to remove them.
6. Pull out the taillamp assembly and disconnect the wiring harness.
7. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it.
8. Pull the old bulb straight out to remove it.
9. Push the new bulb straight in until it clicks to install it.
10. Turn the bulb socket clockwise to reinstall it.
11. Push the taillamp assembly back into place.

    When reinstalling the taillamp assembly, make sure that you line up the four posts on the assembly with the slots in the vehicle.
12. Turn the two hex nuts clockwise to reinstall them.
13. Put the carpet back in place at the rear of the vehicle.



14. Turn the upper wing nut clockwise to reinstall.
15. Put the convenience net back into place by hooking it to the upper wing nut.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

License Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Turn the lamp assembly counterclockwise and pull the lamp assembly out of the connector.
2. Pull the old bulb from the lamp assembly, keeping the bulb straight as you pull it out.
3. Install the new bulb.
4. Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to reinstall the license plate lamp.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-Up	921
Front Parking/Turn Signal	3157NAK
License Plate Lamp	194
Headlamps	
High-Beam	H9
Low-Beam	H11
Sidemarker	194
Stoplamp, Taillamp, and Turn Signal	3057

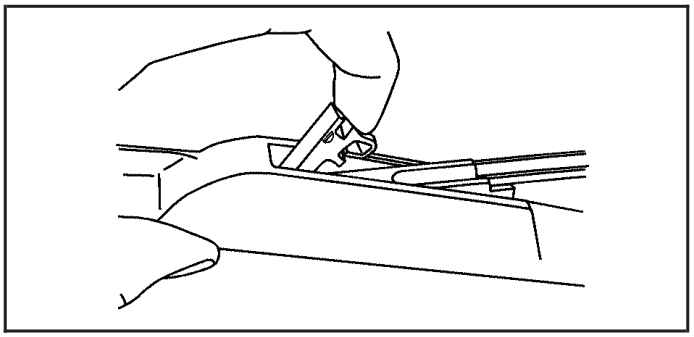
For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer/retailer.

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information on wiper blade inspection.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. Here's how to remove the wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper arm connector away from the windshield.

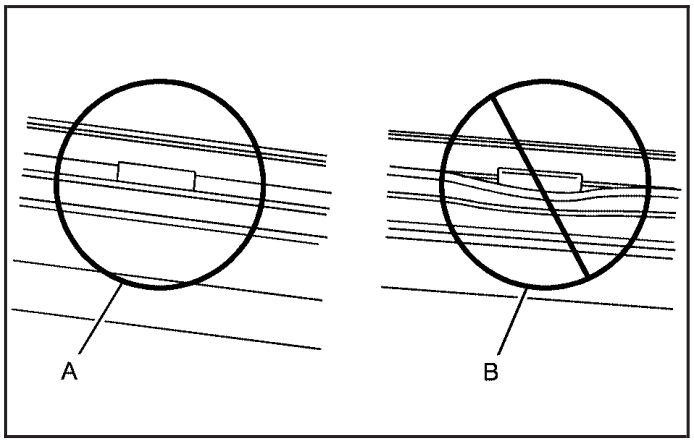


2. While holding the wiper arm, pull the clip up from the blade connecting point, and pull the blade assembly down toward the windshield to remove it from the wiper arm.
3. Install the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm and snap the clip down into place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To remove and replace the wiper blade element do the following:

1. The wiper blade element has two notches at one end which are engaged by the bottom claw set of the wiper blade. At the notched end of the wiper blade, pull the wiper blade element from the wiper blade assembly.
2. To replace the element, start at the heel end of the wiper blade, which is the end nearest to the base of the wiper arm, and slide the wiper blade element, notched end last, into the wiper blade claw sets.
3. To engage the last claw into the notched end of the wiper blade element, squeeze the wiper blade element at the notched area, and push the wiper blade element so the claw fits into the notch.
4. Be sure the two wiper blade element notches are engaged by the last claw set, and that all the other claws are properly engaged in the slots of the wiper blade element on both sides.



A. Correct Installation
B. Incorrect Installation

For the proper type and size windshield wiper blades, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your vehicle Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- Overloading your vehicle's tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

CAUTION: (Continued)

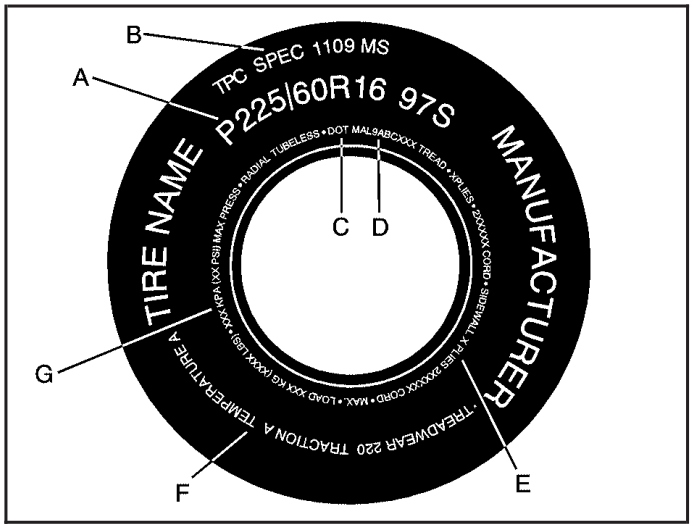
CAUTION: (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your vehicle's tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tire's tread is badly worn, or if your vehicle's tires have been damaged, replace them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples below show a typical passenger vehicle tire and a compact spare tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(A) Tire Size: The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

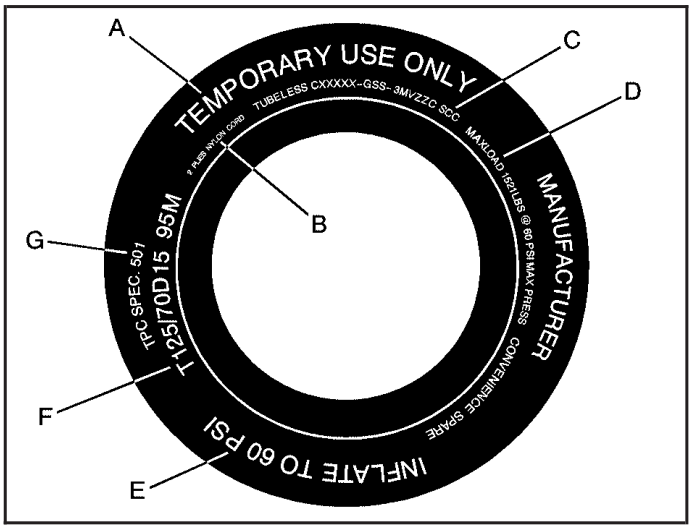
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-71*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.



Compact Spare Tire Example

(A) Temporary Use Only: The compact spare tire or temporary use tire has a tread life of approximately 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and should not be driven at speeds over 65 mph (105 km/h). The compact spare tire is for emergency use when a regular road tire has lost air and gone flat. If your vehicle has a compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-88* and *If a Tire Goes Flat on page 5-75*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(B) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(C) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following the DOT (Department of Transportation) code is the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(D) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

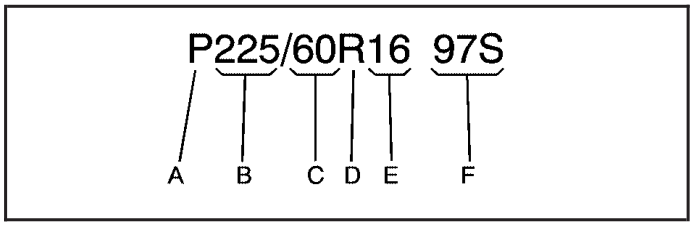
(E) Tire Inflation: The temporary use tire or compact spare tire should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa). For more information on tire pressure and inflation see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*.

(F) Tire Size: A combination of letters and numbers define a tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. The letter T as the first character in the tire size means the tire is for temporary use only.

(G) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

Tire Size

The following illustration shows an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item C of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carry capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cold Tire Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*.

Curb Weight: The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-68*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-71*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to your vehicle. This label shows your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they are cold. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tire and Loading Information label, see *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*. How you load your vehicle affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load your vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the compact spare tire, it should be at 60 psi (420 kPa). For additional information regarding the compact spare tire, see *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-88*.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-63* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Industry and Science Canada

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) operates on a radio frequency and complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

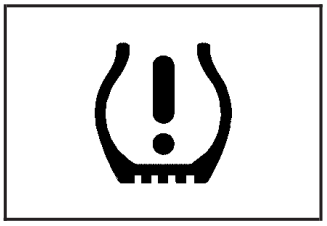
Vehicles with TPMS operate on a radio frequency and comply with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the vehicle's tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light located on the instrument panel cluster.

At the same time a message to check the pressure in a specific tire appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC) display. The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed by the driver. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-42* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-49*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as you start to drive. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure in the tire(s) are getting low and need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of your vehicle's original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location on your vehicle. Also see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*.

Your vehicle's TPMS can warn you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-67* and *Tires on page 5-53*.

Notice: **Liquid tire sealants could damage the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors. Sensor damage caused by using a tire sealant is not covered by your warranty. Do not use liquid tire sealants.**

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message is also displayed. The low tire warning light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause the malfunction light and DIC message to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The TPMS malfunction light and DIC message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPMS sensor.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was started but not completed or not completed successfully after rotating the vehicle's tires. The DIC message and TPMS malfunction light should go off once the TPMS sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the TPMS malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer/retailer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match your vehicle's original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended for your vehicle could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires on page 5-69*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer/retailer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you rotate your vehicle's tires or replace one or more of the TPMS sensors, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear tire using a TPMS diagnostic tool. See your dealer/retailer for service.

The TPMS sensors can also be matched to each tire/wheel position by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. If increasing the tire's air pressure, do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure indicated on the tire's sidewall.

To decrease air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointed end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage, or a key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You have two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than two minutes, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you need to start over.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON/RUN with the engine off.
3. Press the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter's lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately five seconds. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
4. Start with the driver side front tire.
5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPMS sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for five seconds, or until a horn chirp sounds. The horn chirp, which may take up to 30 seconds to sound, confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
6. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
9. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

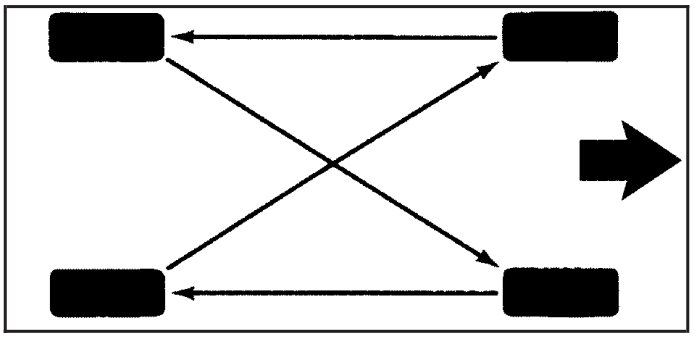
Tire Inspection and Rotation

We recommend that you regularly inspect your vehicle's tires, including the spare tire, for signs of wear or damage. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-68* for more information.

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

The purpose of a regular tire rotation is to achieve a uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. This will ensure that your vehicle continues to perform most like it did when the tires were new.

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate the tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-68* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-73*.



When rotating the vehicle's tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the compact spare tire in the tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60* and *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation on page 5-63*.

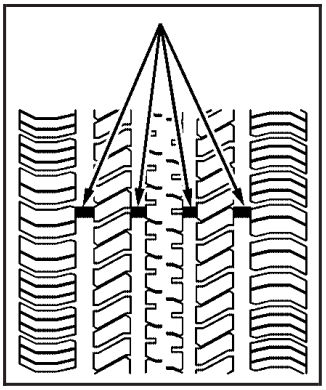
Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Various factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions influence when you need new tires.



One way to tell when it is time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You need new tires if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

The rubber in tires degrades over time, even if they are not being used. This is also true for the spare tire, if your vehicle has one. Multiple conditions affect how fast this aging takes place, including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance. With proper care and maintenance tires will typically wear out before they degrade due to age. If you are unsure about the need to replace your tires as they get older, consult the tire manufacturer for more information.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for your vehicle. The original equipment tires installed on your vehicle, when it was new, were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. If you need replacement tires, GM strongly recommends that you get tires with the same TPC Spec rating. This way, your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give the same performance and vehicle safety, during normal use, as the original tires.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of your vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by an MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling on page 5-54* for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GM recommends replacing tires in sets of four. This is because uniform tread depth on all tires will help keep your vehicle performing most like it did when the tires were new. Replacing less than a full set of tires can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-67* for information on proper tire rotation.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes, brands, or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes, brands, or types may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels. It is all right to drive with your compact spare temporarily, as it was developed for use on your vehicle. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-88*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on the vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If you must replace your vehicle's tires with those that do not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction type (radial and bias-belted tires) as your vehicle's original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed on your vehicle. Non-TPC Spec rated tires may give a low-pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec rated tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-62*.

Your vehicle's original equipment tires are listed on the Tire and Loading Information Label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*, for more information about the Tire and Loading Information Label and its location on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If you add wheels or tires that are a different size than your original equipment wheels and tires, this may affect the way your vehicle performs, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover. Additionally, if your vehicle has electronic systems such as, antilock brakes, traction control, and electronic stability control, the performance of these systems can be affected.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you add different sized wheels, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires on page 5-69* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 5-3* for additional information.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver, or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. It should be noted that the temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing will not be necessary on a regular basis. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling to one side or the other, the alignment might need to be checked. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels might need to be rebalanced. See your dealer/retailer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer/retailer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer/retailer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, and TPMS sensors for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76* for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on the vehicle is dangerous. You cannot know how it has been used or how far it has been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

If your vehicle has P225/55R17 or P235/50R18 size tires, do not use tire chains, there is not enough clearance.

Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash.

CAUTION: (Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION: (Continued)

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust, or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin your wheels.

If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the front tires.

Notice: **If your vehicle has a tire size other than P225/55R17 or P235/50R18 size tires, use tire chains only where legal and only when you must. Use only SAE Class S-type chains that are the proper size for your tires. Install them on the front tires and tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.**

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blowout while you are driving, especially if you maintain your vehicle's tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you would use in a skid. In any rear blowout remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use the jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 3-6*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.

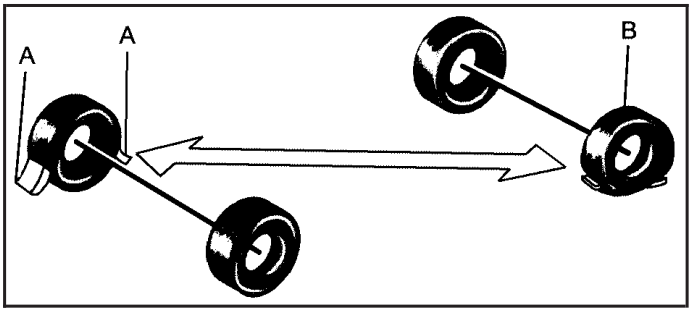
CAUTION: (Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION: (Continued)

To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (B), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (A).



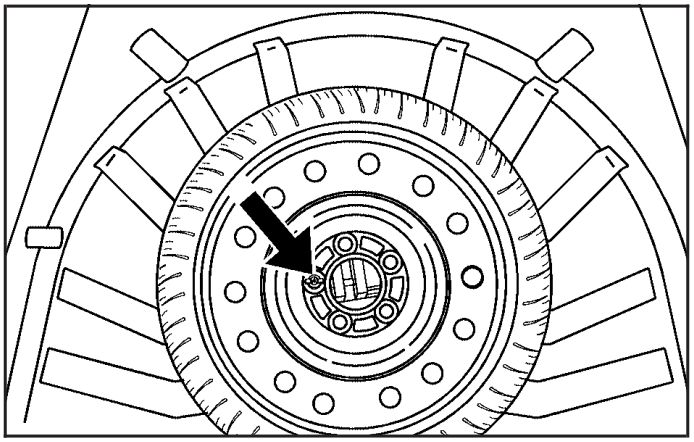
A. Wheel Block
B. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to use the jack and change a tire.

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools

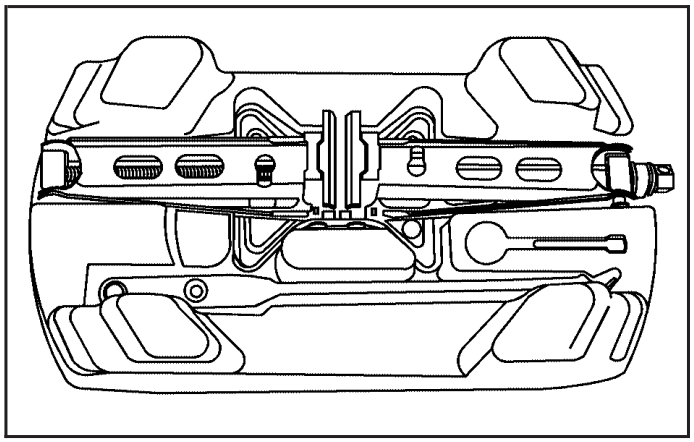
The equipment you will need is located in the trunk.

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk on page 2-12*.
2. Remove the convenience net if the vehicle has one.
3. Remove the spare tire cover.

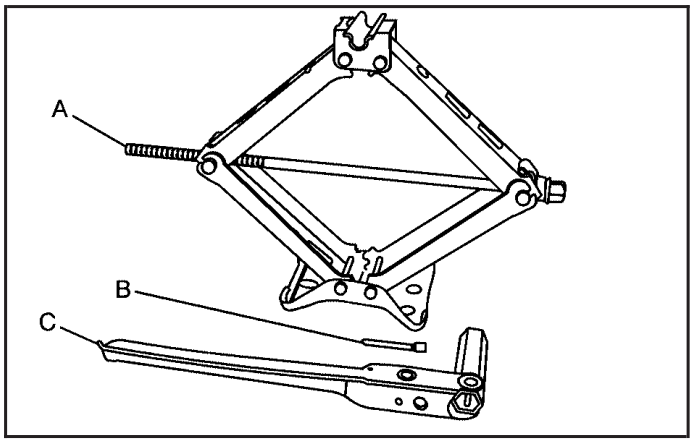


4. Turn the wing nut counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Remove the compact spare tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



6. Turn the nut holding the jack counterclockwise and remove it. Then remove the jack and wrench.



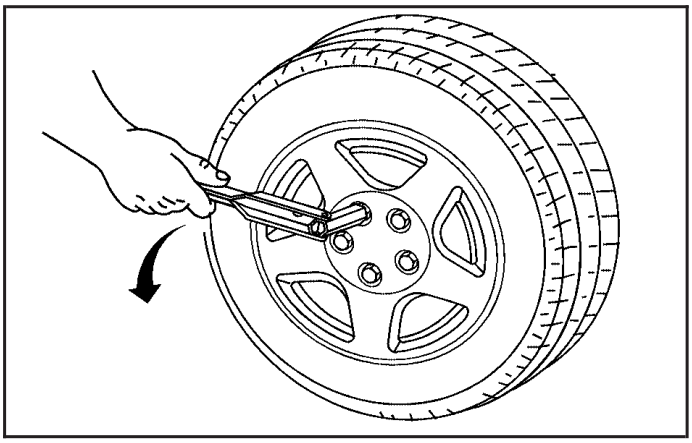
The tools you will need to change a tire include the jack (A), extension and protection guide (B), and wheel wrench (C).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

This vehicle may have aluminum wheels with exposed wheel nuts. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove them yet.

Or, this vehicle may have steel wheels with plastic covers.

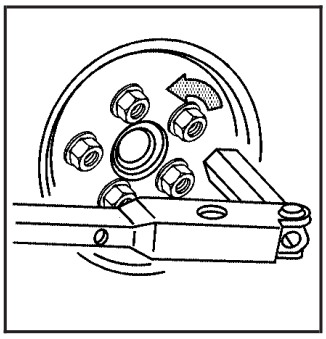


To remove the plastic covers and wheel nut caps, loosen the plastic nut caps with the wheel wrench in a counterclockwise direction. If needed, finish loosening them with your fingers. The plastic nut caps will not come off.

If needed, use the flat end of the wheel wrench and pry along the edge of the cover until it comes off. The edge of the wheel cover could be sharp, so do not try to remove it with your bare hands. Do not drop the cover or lay it face down, as it could become scratched or damaged. Store the wheel cover in the trunk until the flat tire is repaired or replaced.

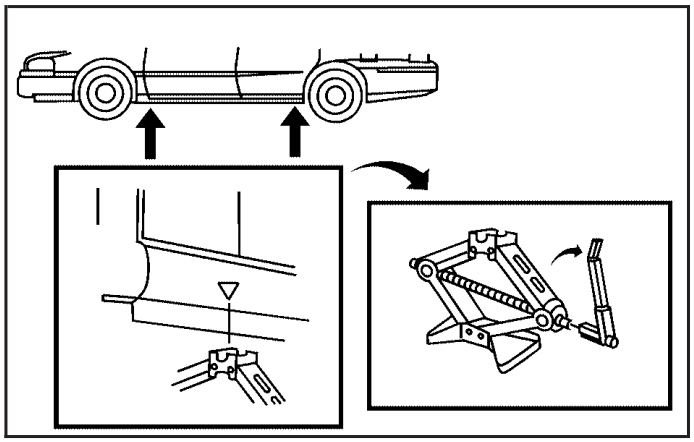
Once you have removed the wheel cover, use the following procedure to remove the flat tire and install the spare tire.

1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*



2. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise once on each wheel nut to loosen them. Do not remove them yet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. For all wheel types, find the jacking location using the diagram above and the corresponding jacking notches located on the bottom side of the plastic molding. The notches in the plastic molding are marked with a triangle shape to help you find them.

   The front location is about 7.0 inches (17.7 cm) from the rear edge of the front wheel well. The rear location is about 4.5 inches (11.4 cm) from the front edge of the rear wheel well.

4. Put the compact spare tire near you.

⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

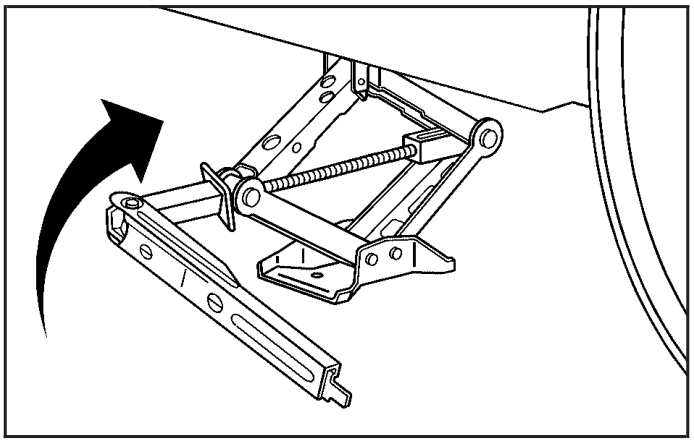
⚠ CAUTION:

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

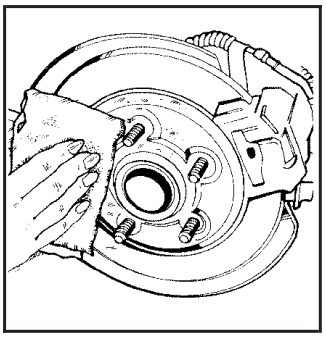


5. Raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground to install the compact spare tire.
6. Remove all wheel nuts and the flat tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.



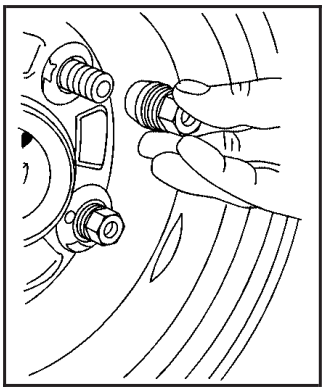
7. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.

8. Install the compact spare tire.

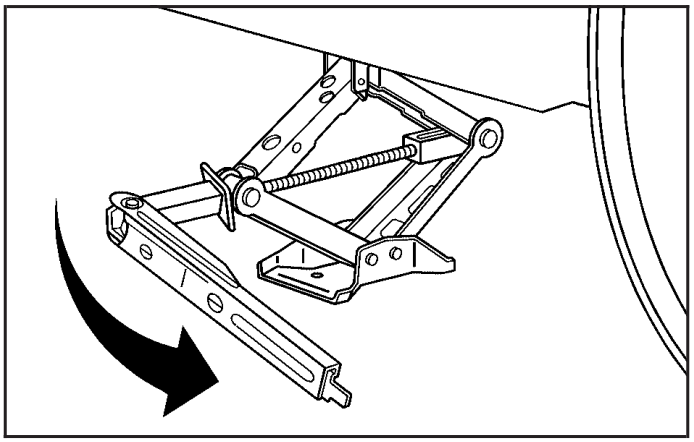
⚠ CAUTION:

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



9. Reinstall the wheel nuts with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each nut clockwise by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.



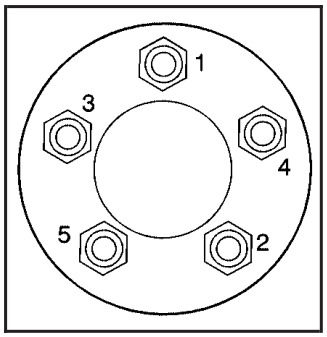
10. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle counterclockwise. Lower the jack completely.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



11. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown.

Notice: **Wheel covers will not fit on your vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

After the compact spare tire has been installed on the vehicle, store the flat tire in the trunk.

When storing a full-size tire, use the extension with the extension protector, located in the foam holder, to help avoid wheel surface damage.

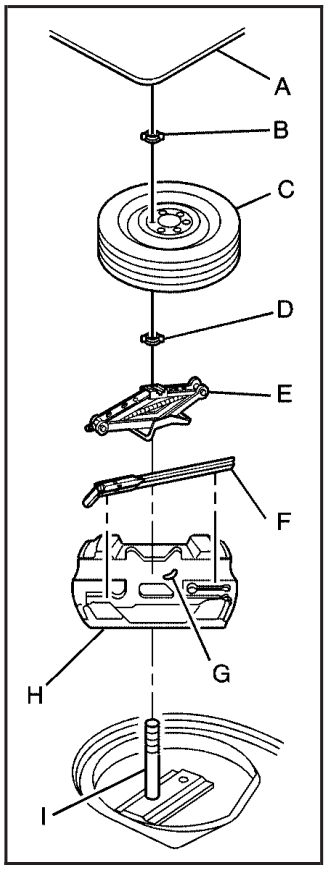
To store a full-size tire:

1. Install the tools in their original location in the trunk area and secure.
2. Place the tire valve stem facing down and the protector/guide placed through a wheel bolt hole and threaded onto the bolt screw.
3. Remove the protector and attach the retainer securely
4. Store the cover as far forward as possible.

When storing a compact spare tire in the trunk, put the protector back in the foam holder.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tire with a full-size tire as soon as you can. See *Compact Spare Tire on page 5-88*. Use this as a guide for storing the compact spare tire and tools.

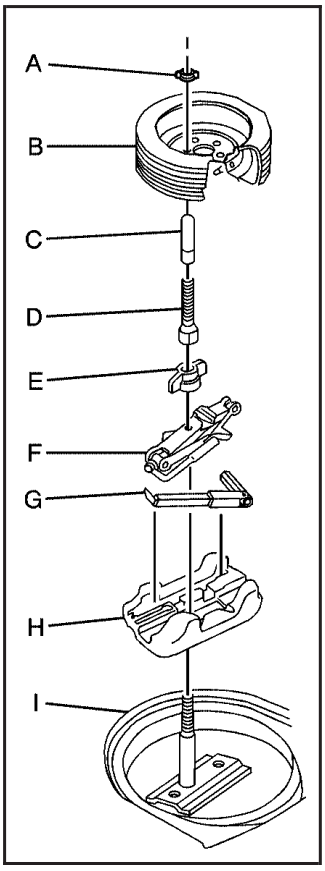
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Compact Spare Tire

A. Cover
B. Retainer
C. Compact Spare Tire
D. Wing Nut
E. Jack
F. Wheel Wrench
G. Extension Protector
H. Foam Holder
I. Bolt Screw

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Full-Size Flat Tire

A. Retainer
B. Full-Size Flat Tire
C. Protective Guide
D. Extension Bolt Screw
E. Wing Nut
F. Jack
G. Wheel Wrench
H. Foam Holder
I. Bolt Screw

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compact Spare Tire

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving with more than one compact spare tire at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tire at a time.

Although the compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 60 psi (420 kPa).

After installing the compact spare on the vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare tire is correctly inflated. The compact spare is made to perform well at speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/h) for distances up to 3,000 miles (5 000 km), so you can finish your trip and have the full-size tire repaired or replaced where you want. You must calibrate the tire inflation monitor system after installing or removing the compact spare. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-62*.

The system may not work correctly when the compact spare is installed on the vehicle. Of course, it's best to replace the spare with a full-size tire as soon as you can. The spare will last longer and be in good shape in case you need it again.

Notice: **When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel and other parts of the vehicle.**

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

And do not mix the compact spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Notice: **Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and can damage the chains too. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Appearance Care

Interior Cleaning

The vehicle's interior will continue to look its best if it is cleaned often. Although not always visible, dust and dirt can accumulate on the upholstery. Dirt can damage carpet, fabric, leather, and plastic surfaces. Regular vacuuming is recommended to remove particles from the upholstery. It is important to keep the upholstery from becoming and remaining heavily soiled. Soils should be removed as quickly as possible. The vehicle's interior may experience extremes of heat that could cause stains to set rapidly.

Lighter colored interiors may require more frequent cleaning. Use care because newspapers and garments that transfer color to home furnishings may also transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

When cleaning the vehicle's interior, only use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned. Permanent damage may result from using cleaners on surfaces for which they were not intended. Use glass cleaner only on glass. Remove any accidental over-spray from other surfaces immediately. To prevent over-spray, apply cleaner directly to the cleaning cloth.

Notice: **Using abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on the vehicle, could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger. When cleaning the glass on the vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Many cleaners contain solvents that may become concentrated in the vehicle's breathing space. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the vehicle's interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the vehicle's doors and windows.

Dust may be removed from small buttons and knobs using a small brush with soft bristles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Products that remove odors from the vehicle's upholstery and clean the vehicle's glass can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Do not clean the vehicle using:

- A knife or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- A stiff brush. It can cause damage to the vehicle's interior surfaces.
- Heavy pressure or aggressive rubbing with a cleaning cloth. Use of heavy pressure can damage the interior and does not improve the effectiveness of soil removal.
- Laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers can leave residue that streaks and attracts dirt. For liquid cleaners, about 20 drops per gallon (3.78 L) of water is a good guide. Use only mild, neutral-pH soaps.
- Too much cleaner that saturates the upholstery.
- Organic solvents such as naptha, alcohol, etc. that can damage the vehicle's interior.

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush attachment frequently to remove dust and loose dirt. A canister vacuum with a beater bar in the nozzle may only be used on floor carpet and carpeted floor mats. For any soil, always try to remove it first with plain water or club soda. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- For liquids: gently blot the remaining soil with a paper towel. Allow the soil to absorb into the paper towel until no more can be removed.
- For solid dry soils: remove as much as possible and then vacuum.

To clean:

1. Saturate a lint-free, clean white cloth with water or club soda.
2. Wring the cloth to remove excess moisture.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
4. Continue to gently rub the soiled area until the cleaning cloth remains clean.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution and repeat the cleaning process that was used with plain water.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If any of the soil remains, a commercial fabric cleaner or spot lifter may be necessary. When a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter is to be used, test a small hidden area for colorfastness first. If the locally cleaned area gives any impression that a ring formation may result, clean the entire surface.

After the cleaning process has been completed, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture from the fabric or carpet.

Leather

A soft cloth dampened with water can be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used. Allow the leather to dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry. Never use steam to clean leather. Never use spot lifters or spot removers on leather. Many commercial leather cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect leather may permanently change the appearance and feel of the leather and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner. Never use shoe polish on leather.

Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces

A soft cloth dampened with water may be used to remove dust. If a more thorough cleaning is necessary, a clean soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution can be used to gently remove dust and dirt. Never use spot lifters or removers on plastic surfaces. Many commercial cleaners and coatings that are sold to preserve and protect soft plastic surfaces may permanently change the appearance and feel of the interior and are not recommended. Do not use silicone or wax-based products, or those containing organic solvents to clean the vehicle's interior because they can alter the appearance by increasing the gloss in a non-uniform manner.

Some commercial products may increase gloss on the instrument panel. The increase in gloss may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

If dirt and/or contaminants build up in the glass seals, use a cloth and water to clean the glass seals. Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather, frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often.

Notice: **Certain cleaners contain chemicals that can damage the emblems or nameplates on the vehicle. Check the cleaning product label. If it states that it should not be used on plastic parts, do not use it on the vehicle or damage may occur and it would not be covered by the warranty.**

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Use a car washing soap. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based or that contain acid or abrasives, as they can damage the paint, metal or plastic on the vehicle. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer. Follow all manufacturers' directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using high pressure washes closer than 12 inches (30 cm) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-92*.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

If the vehicle has a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish, the clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, chrome polish may be used on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean the rubber blades using a lint free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking. Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged.

Wipers can be damaged by:

- Extreme dusty conditions
- Sand and salt
- Heat and sun
- Snow and ice, without proper removal

Aluminum Wheels

Notice: **Using strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of the vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because the surface could be damaged. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Driving the vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never drive a vehicle that has aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your dealer/retailer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's/retailer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer/retailer or an underbody car washing system can do this.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, we will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for the vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side. It can be seen through the windshield from outside the vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code helps identify the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-101* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

This label is in the trunk. It is very helpful if parts need to be ordered. The label has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Do not add anything electrical to the vehicle unless you check with your dealer/retailer first. Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-71*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headlamp Wiring

The headlamp wiring is protected by fuses in the fuse block. An electrical overload will cause the lamps to turn off. If this happens, have the headlamp wiring checked right away.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem, have it fixed.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

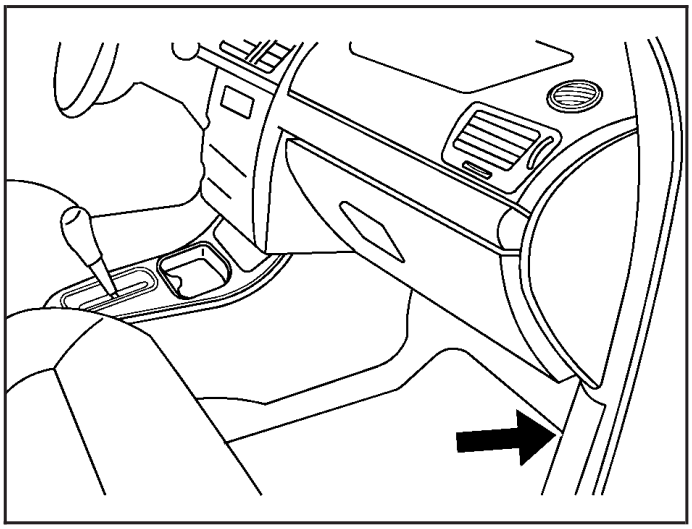
Circuit breakers in the instrument panel fuse panel protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

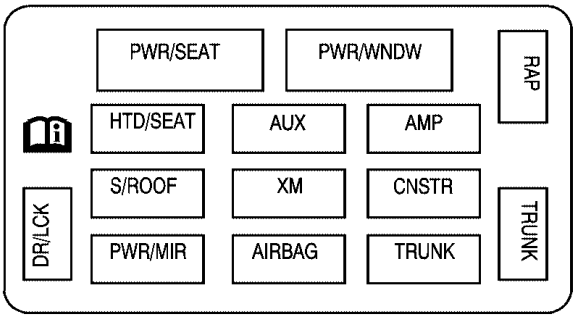
Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The fuse block is located on the passenger side of the vehicle in the carpet molding. Remove the fuse block door to access the fuses.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Fuses	Usage
AIRBAG	Airbags
AMP	Amplifier
AUX	Auxiliary Outlets
CNSTR	Canister
DR/LCK	Door Locks
HTD/SEAT	Heated Seats

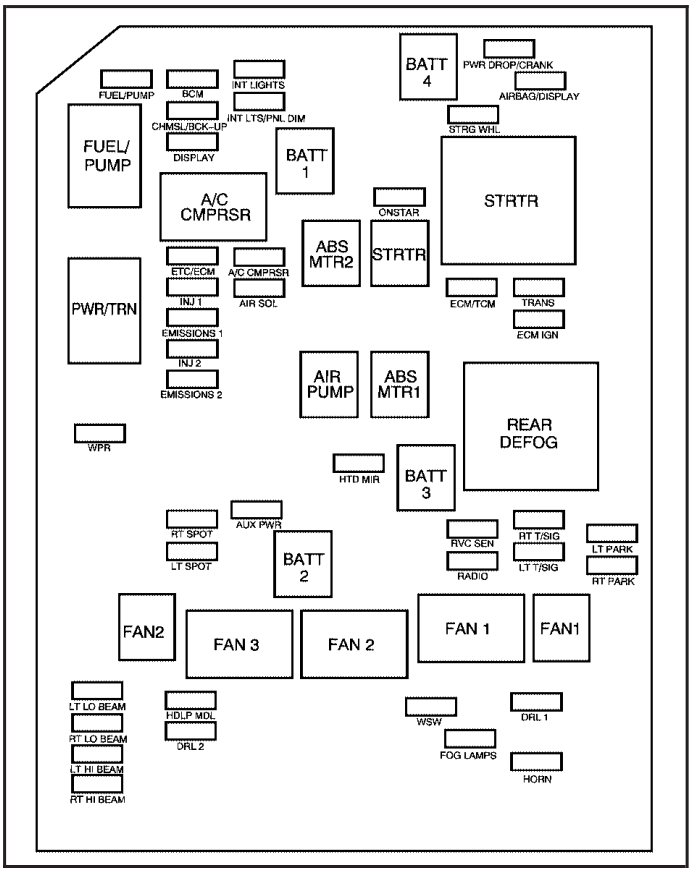
Fuses	Usage
PWR/MIR	Power Mirrors
PWR/SEAT	Power Seats
PWR/WNDW	Power Window
RAP	Retained Accessory Power
S/ROOF	Sunroof
TRUNK	Trunk
TRUNK	Trunk Relay
XM	XM™ Radio

Underhood Fuse Block

The underhood fuse block is located in the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-14* for more information on location.

Notice: **Spilling liquid on any electrical components on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Fuses	Usage
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
ABS MTR 1	Antilock Brake System (ABS) Motor 1
ABS MTR 2	ABS Motor 2
AIR PUMP	Air Pump
AIR SOL	Air Injection Reactor Solenoid
AIRBAG/ DISPLAY	Airbag, Display
AUX PWR	Auxiliary Power
BATT 1	Battery 1
BATT 2	Battery 2
BATT 3	Battery 3
BATT 4	Battery 4
BCM	Body Control Module (BCM)
CHMSL/ BCK-UP	Center High-Mounted Stoplamp, Back-up Lamp
DISPLAY	Display
DRL 1	Daytime Running Lamps 1
DRL 2	Daytime Running Lamps 2
ECM IGN	Engine Control Module (ECM), Ignition
ECM/TCM	ECM, Transmission Control Module (TCM)
EMISSIONS 1	Emissions 1
EMISSIONS 2	Emissions 2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
ETC/ECM	Electronic Throttle Control, ECM
FAN 1	Cooling Fan 1
FAN 2	Cooling Fan 2
FOG LAMPS	Fog Lamps (If Equipped)
FUEL/PUMP	Fuel Pump
HDLP MDL	Headlamp Module
HORN	Horn
HTD MIR	Heated Mirror
INJ 1	Injector 1
INJ 2	Injector 2
INT LIGHTS	Interior Lamps
INT LTS/ PNL DIM	Interior Lamps, Instrument Panel Dimmer
LT HI BEAM	Driver Side High-Beam Headlamp
LT LO BEAM	Driver Side Low-Beam Headlamp
LT PARK	Driver Side Parking Lamp
LT SPOT	Left Spot
LT T/SIG	Driver Side Turn Signal Lamp
ONSTAR	OnStar®
PWR DROP/ CRANK	Power Drop, Crank
RADIO	Audio System
RT HI BEAM	Passenger Side High-Beam Headlamp

Fuses	Usage
RT LO BEAM	Passenger Side Low-Beam Headlamp
RT PARK	Passenger Side Parking Lamp
RT SPOT	Right Spot
RT T/SIG	Passenger Side Turn Signal Lamp
RVC SEN	Regulated Voltage Control Sensor
STRG WHL	Steering Wheel
STRTR	Starter
TRANS	Transmission
WPR	Wiper
WSW	Windshield Wiper

Relay	Usage
A/C CMPRSR	Air Conditioning Compressor
FAN 1	Cooling Fan 1
FAN 2	Cooling Fan 2
FAN 3	Cooling Fan 3
FUEL/PUMP	Fuel Pump
PWR/TRN	Powertrain
REAR DEFOG	Rear Defogger
STRTR	Starter

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Air Conditioning Refrigerant R134a	For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. See your dealer/retailer for more information.	
Automatic Transmission	7.4 qt	7.0 L
Cooling System Including Reservoir		
3.5L V6, 3.5L and 3.9L V6 Flexible Fuel Engines	10.1 qt	9.6 L
5.3L V8 Engine	13.3 qt	12.6 L
Engine Oil with Filter		
3.5L V6, 3.5L and 3.9L V6 Flexible Fuel Engines	4.0 qt	3.8 L
5.3L V8 Engine	6.0 qt	5.7 L

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Application	Capacities	
	English	Metric
Fuel Tank		
3.5L Engine (with NU6 emissions)	17.0 gal	64.4 L
3.5L Engine (without NU6 emissions)	17.5 gal	66.2 L
3.9L and 5.3L	17.5 gal	66.2 L
Wheel Nut Torque	100 lb ft	140 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
3.5L V6	N	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)
3.5L Flexible Fuel V6	K	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)
3.9L Flexible Fuel V6	M	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)
5.3L V8	C	Automatic	0.040 in (1.01 mm)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Using the Maintenance Schedule 6-3
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Additional Required Services 6-6
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Owner Checks and Services 6-8
At Each Fuel Fill 6-8
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-13
Engine Drive Belt Routing 6-14
Maintenance Record 6-15

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements the vehicle warranties. See the Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer/retailer for details.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts, and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from the vehicle. To help protect the environment, and to keep the vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain the vehicle properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Maintenance Schedule

We want to help keep this vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You might drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you might drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You might use the vehicle in making deliveries. Or you might drive it to work, to do errands, or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You might need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer/retailer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading the Vehicle on page 4-20*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-7* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your dealer/retailer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 5-4*.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, have your dealer/retailer do these jobs.

When you go to your dealer/retailer for service, trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine parts.

To purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-17*.

Owner Checks and Services on page 6-8 tells what should be checked, when to check it, and what can easily be done to help keep the vehicle in good condition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12* and *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-13*. When the vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine parts from your dealer/retailer.

Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, service is required for the vehicle. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer/retailer has trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since the last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-20* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message appears, certain services, checks, and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for "Maintenance I" and "Maintenance II." Generally, it is recommended that the first service be Maintenance I, the second service be Maintenance II, and then alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

Maintenance I — Use Maintenance I if the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

Maintenance II — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays 10 months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-20*. *An Emission Control Service.*	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (k).*	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter. If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*. *See footnote (m).*		•
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-67* and "Tire Wear Inspection" in *At Least Once a Month on page 6-9*.	•	•
Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*	•	•
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See "Additional Required Services" in this section.	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*		•
Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*		•
Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*		•
Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*		•
Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*		•
Check transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•
Replace passenger compartment air filter, if equipped. *See footnote (g).*		•
Inspect throttle system. *See footnote (j).*		•

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (40 000)	50,000 (80 000)	75,000 (120 000)	100,000 (160 000)	125,000 (200 000)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-21*.		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		
Replace spark plugs and inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		
Engine cooling system service (or every five years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (n).*						•

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen, or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings, and clamps; replace with genuine parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Inspect wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. Clean the windshield and wiper blades, if contaminated. Replace wiper blades that are worn or damaged. See Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement on page 5-51* and *Windshield and Wiper Blades on page 5-94 for more information.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and safety belt assemblies are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also see Checking the Restraint Systems on page 1-73*.

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders. Lubricate all hinges and latches, including those for the body doors, hood, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, rear compartment, glove box door, console door, and any folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *If driving regularly under dusty conditions, the filter may require replacement more often.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police, or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush, and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer/retailer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 5-28 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap, and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *Check throttle system for interference or binding and for damaged or missing parts. Replace parts as needed. Replace any components that have high effort or excessive wear. Do not lubricate accelerator or cruise control cables.*

(k) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(m) *If driving regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

(n) *Visually inspect belt for fraying, excessive cracks, or obvious damage. Replace belt if necessary.*

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure vehicle safety, dependability, and emission control performance. Your dealer/retailer can assist with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to the vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-12*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Notice: **It is important to check the engine oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep the engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to the engine not covered by the vehicle warranty.**

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-28*.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer fluid reservoir and add the proper fluid if necessary.

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Inspect the vehicle's tires and make sure they are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check the spare tire. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-60*. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-76*.

Tire Wear Inspection

Tire rotation may be required for high mileage highway drivers prior to the Engine Oil Life System service notification. Check the tires for wear and, if necessary, rotate the tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-67*.

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-26*.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-26*.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to ON/RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer/retailer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK/OFF only when the shift lever is in P (Park).
- The ignition key should come out only in LOCK/OFF.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer/retailer if service is required.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 5-17*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-28*.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 12377967, in Canada 89021320).
Windshield Washer	Optikleen® Washer Solvent.
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. U.S. 12346293, in Canada 992723) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hood and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Replacement Parts

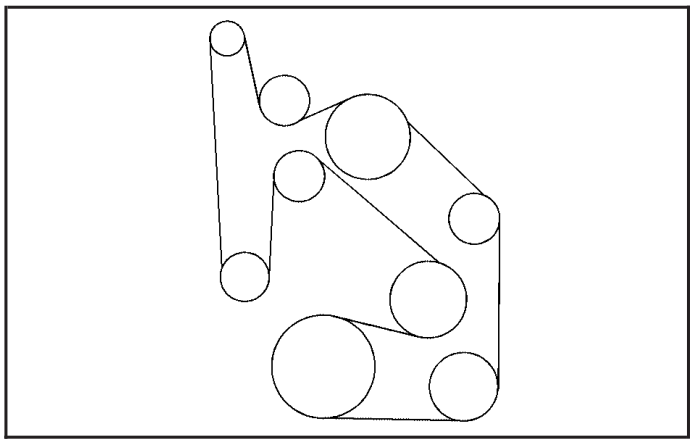
Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer/retailer.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

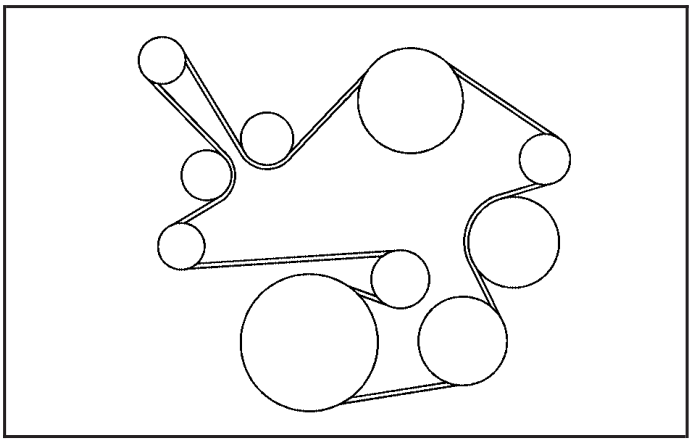
Part	GM Part Number	AC Delco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	10350737	A2962C
Engine Oil Filter		
3.5L V6, 3.5L and 3.9L V6 Flexible Fuel Engines	89017342	PF61
5.3L V8 Engine	89017524	PF48
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	15284938	CF132
Spark Plugs		
3.5L V6, 3.5L and 3.9L V6 Flexible Fuel Engines	12591131	41-100
5.3L V8 Engine	12609877	41-985
Wiper Blades		
Driver - 21.7 in (55.0 cm)	15941731	—
Passenger - 21.7 in (55.0 cm)	15941732	—

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Drive Belt Routing



3.5L V6 and 3.9 V6 Engines



5.3L V8 Engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2*. Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-8* can be added on the following record pages. You should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Section 7 Customer Assistance Information

Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
- Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
- Online Owner Center 7-5
- Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
- Customer Assistance Offices 7-6
- GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-7
- Roadside Assistance Program 7-8
- Scheduling Service Appointments 7-10
- Courtesy Transportation 7-11
- Collision Damage Repair 7-12

Reporting Safety Defects 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-16
- Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-16
- Service Publications Ordering Information 7-17

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18
- Event Data Recorders 7-18
- OnStar® 7-19
- Navigation System 7-19
- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 7-19

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Chevrolet. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by the dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service, or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, in the U.S., call the Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center at 1-800-222-1020. In Canada, call General Motors of Canada Customer Communication Centre at 1-800-263-3777 (English), or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Chevrolet, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
dr.bbb.org/goauto

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners: In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps 1 and 2, General Motors of Canada Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge Mediation/ Arbitration Program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the General Motors Customer Communication Centre, 1-800-263-3777 (English), 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write to:

The Mediation/Arbitration Program
c/o Customer Communication Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Your inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Center (U.S.) — www.gmownercenter.com/chevrolet

Information and services customized for your specific vehicle — all in one convenient place.

- Digital owner manual, warranty information, and more
- Online service and maintenance records
- Find Chevrolet dealers for service nationwide
- Exclusive privileges and offers
- Recall notices for your specific vehicle
- OnStar® and GM Cardmember Services Earnings summaries

Other Helpful Links:

Chevrolet — www.chevrolet.com

Chevrolet Merchandise — www.chevymall.com

Help Center — www.chevrolet.com/helpcenter

- FAQ
- Contact Us

My GM Canada (Canada) — www.gm.ca

My GM Canada is a password-protected section of www.gm.ca where you can save information on GM vehicles, get personalized offers, and use handy tools and forms with greater ease.

Here are a few of the valuable tools and services you will have access to:

- My Showroom: Find and save information on vehicles and current offers in your area.
- My Dealers/Retailers: Save details such as address and phone number for each of your preferred GM dealers/retailers.
- My Driveway: Access quick links to parts and service estimates, check trade-in values, or schedule a service appointment by adding the vehicles you own to your driveway profile.
- My Preferences: Manage your profile and use tools and forms with greater ease.

To sign up, visit the My GM Canada section within www.gm.ca.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Chevrolet has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user in the U.S. can communicate with Chevrolet by dialing: 1-800-833-CHEV (2438). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

Customer Assistance Offices

Chevrolet encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Chevrolet, the letter should be addressed to:

United States — Customer Assistance

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

Chevrolet.com
1-800-222-1020
1-800-833-2438 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-CHEV-USA (243-8872)

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994

Canada — Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

gmcanada.com
1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-268-6800

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overseas — Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) — Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

GM MOBILITY℠

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 of the cost of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for your vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift.

The offer is available for a very limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details.
TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roadside Assistance Program

For U.S. purchased vehicles, call **1-800-CHEV-USA (1-800-243-8872); (Text telephone (TTY): 1-888-889-2438)**.

For Canadian purchased vehicles, call **1-800-268-6800**.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Assistance

When calling Roadside Assistance, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Coverage

Services are provided up to 5 years/ 100,000 miles (160 000 km), whichever comes first.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Assistance is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Assistance program at any time without notification.

Chevrolet and General Motors of Canada Limited reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Services Provided

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service is provided to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar®. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow From a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Chevrolet dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is also given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service is provided to change a flat tire with the spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is the owner's responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service is provided to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 5 years/ 100,000 miles (160 000 km) Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car.

Services Not Included in Roadside Assistance

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.
- Towing or services for vehicles driven on a non-public road or highway.

Services Specific to Canadian Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is approximately $5 Canadian. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Routing Service:** Detailed maps of North America are provided when requested either with the most direct route or the most scenic route. There is a limit of six requests per year. Additional travel information is also available. Allow three weeks for delivery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Assistance:** Must be over 250 kilometres from where your trip was started to qualify. General Motors of Canada Limited requires pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Assistance advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Assistance advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Assistance. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer/retailer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer/retailer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership/retailer, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer/retailer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for the same day repair.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Courtesy Transportation

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper to Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada) and extended powertrain, and hybrid specific warranty in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several courtesy transportation options are available to assist in reducing your inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait, GM helps to minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Shuttle service is the preferred means of offering Courtesy Transportation. Dealers may provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes one-way or round trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of the dealer’s area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, and public transportation is used instead of the dealer's shuttle service, the expense must be supported by original receipts and can only be up to the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. In addition, for U.S. customers, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information regarding the allowance amounts for reimbursement of fuel or other transportation costs.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for an overnight warranty repair. Rental reimbursement will be limited and must be supported by original receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

It may not be possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If your vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish your vehicle's resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which your vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are your best choice to ensure that your vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain your GM New Vehicle Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part, may be an acceptable choice to maintain your vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance, however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for your vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by your GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts are not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

We recommend that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer/retailer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state of the art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Insuring Your Vehicle

Protect your investment in your GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to your GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you assure your vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If your vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that assures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read your lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of your lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

Here is what to do if you are involved in a crash.

- Check to make sure that you are all right. If you are uninjured, make sure that no one else in your vehicle, or the other vehicle, is injured.
- If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move your vehicle only if its position puts you in danger or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.
- Give only the necessary and requested information to police and other parties involved in the crash. Do not discuss your personal condition, mental frame of mind, or anything unrelated to the crash. This will help guard against post-crash legal action.
- If you need roadside assistance, call GM Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Assistance Program on page 7-8* for more information.
- If your vehicle cannot be driven, know where the towing service will be taking it. Get a card from the tow truck operator or write down the driver's name, the service's name, and the phone number.
- Remove any valuables from your vehicle before it is towed away. Make sure this includes your insurance information and registration if you keep these items in your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Gather the important information you will need from the other driver. Things like name, address, phone number, driver's license number, vehicle license plate, vehicle make, model and model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), insurance company and policy number, and a general description of the damage to the other vehicle.
- If possible, call your insurance company from the scene of the crash. They will walk you through the information they will need. If they ask for a police report, phone or go to the police department headquarters the next day and you can get a copy of the report for a nominal fee. In some states/provinces with "no fault" insurance laws, a report may not be necessary. This is especially true if there are no injuries and both vehicles are driveable.
- Choose a reputable collision repair facility for your vehicle. Whether you select a dealer/retailer or a private collision repair facility to fix the damage, make sure you are comfortable with them. Remember, you will have to feel comfortable with their work for a long time.
- Once you have an estimate, read it carefully and make sure you understand what work will be performed on your vehicle. If you have a question, ask for an explanation. Reputable shops welcome this opportunity.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that your vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take your vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by your GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with your repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember if your vehicle is leased you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as cost stays within reasonable limits.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer/retailer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington D.C., 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from safercar.gov.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. Call them at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, please notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-222-1020, or write:

Chevrolet Motor Division
Chevrolet Customer Assistance Center
P.O. Box 33170
Detroit, MI 48232-5170

In Canada, call 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French), or write:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Without Portfolio: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00 (U.S.) plus processing fee

Current and Past Model Order Forms

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, specify year and model name of the vehicle.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123
Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM
Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only
(VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc.
on the World Wide Web at: helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Your GM vehicle has a number of sophisticated computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, your vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy airbags in a crash and, if so equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help your dealer/retailer technician service your vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how you operate the vehicle, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access this data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar®

If your vehicle has OnStar and you subscribe to the OnStar services, please refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions for information on data collection and use. See also *OnStar® System on page 2-33* in this manual for more information.

Navigation System

If your vehicle has a navigation system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. Refer to the navigation system operating manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as key fobs for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A

Accessories and Modifications 5-3
Accessory Power 2-21
Accessory Power Outlets 3-18
Active Fuel Management™ 2-23
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-72
Additional Required Services, Scheduled Maintenance 6-6
Additives, Fuel 5-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-96
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 5-21
Air Conditioning 3-20
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 3-23
Airbag
  Readiness Light 3-28
Airbag System 1-57
  Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-72
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-63
  Passenger Sensing System 1-65
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-63
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-64
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-62
  Where Are the Airbags? 1-59
Airbags
  Passenger Status Indicator 3-29
Antenna
  Backglass 3-96
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-96
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 4-5
  Warning Light 3-31
Appearance Care
  Aluminum Wheels 5-94
  Care of Safety Belts 5-92
  Chemical Paint Spotting 5-95
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-93
  Fabric/Carpet 5-90
  Finish Care 5-93
  Finish Damage 5-95
  Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-91
  Interior Cleaning 5-89
  Leather 5-91
  Sheet Metal Damage 5-95
  Tires 5-95
  Underbody Maintenance 5-95
  Washing Your Vehicle 5-92
  Weatherstrips 5-92
  Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-94

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ashtray 3-19
Assistance Program, Roadside 7-8
Audio System 3-63
  Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-94
  Setting the Clock 3-64
  XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-96
Audio System(s) 3-66
Audio Systems
  Radio Reception 3-95
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-93
Automatic Door Lock 2-10
Automatic Transmission
  Fluid 5-24
  Operation 2-24

B

Backglass Antenna 3-96
Battery 5-40
  Electric Power Management 3-17
  Run-Down Protection 3-18
Belt Routing, Engine 6-14
Bluetooth® 3-82
Brake
  Emergencies 4-6
Brake Fluid 5-37
Brakes 5-37
  Antilock 4-5
  Parking 2-26
  System Warning Light 3-30
Braking 4-4
Braking in Emergencies 4-6
Break-In, New Vehicle 2-19
Bulb Replacement 5-51
  Fog Lamp 3-14
  Halogen Bulbs 5-45
  Headlamp Aiming 5-45
  Headlamps 5-45
  Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps 5-46
  License Plate Lamps 5-51
  Taillamps, Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 5-49
Buying New Tires 5-69

C

Calibration 3-47
California
  Perchlorate Materials Requirements 5-4
California Fuel 5-6
California Proposition 65 Warning 5-4

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Canadian Owners ii
Capacities and Specifications 5-101
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 2-30
Trunk 2-12
Winter Driving 4-17
Care of
Safety Belts 5-92
CD, MP3 3-77
Center Console Storage 2-43
Center Seat 1-10
Chains, Tire 5-74
Charging System Light 3-30
Check
Engine Lamp 3-36
Checking Things Under the Hood 5-12
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-95
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 1-37
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-45
Older Children 1-34
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Seat Position 1-50
Securing a Child Restraint in the Center Front Seat Position 1-53
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-54
Systems 1-41
Where to Put the Restraint 1-43
Cigarette Lighter 3-19
Circuit Breakers 5-97
Cleaning
Aluminum Wheels 5-94
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-93
Fabric/Carpet 5-90
Finish Care 5-93
Instrument Panel, Vinyl, and Other Plastic Surfaces 5-91
Interior 5-89
Leather 5-91
Tires 5-95
Underbody Maintenance 5-95
Washing Your Vehicle 5-92
Weatherstrips 5-92
Windshield and Wiper Blades 5-94
Climate Control System 3-20
Outlet Adjustment 3-23
Clock, Setting 3-64
Collision Damage Repair 7-12
Compact Spare Tire 5-88
Compass 3-47
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
Control of a Vehicle 4-3
Convenience Net 2-43
Coolant
Engine 5-28
Engine Temperature Gage 3-34
Engine Temperature Warning Light 3-34

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cooling System 5-26
Courtesy Lamps 3-15
Courtesy Transportation 7-11
Cruise Control 3-9
Cruise Control Light 3-40
Cupholders 2-43
Customer Assistance 7-6
  Offices 7-6
  Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
Customer Information
  Service Publications Ordering Information 7-17
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2

D

Damage Repair, Collision 7-12
Data Recorders
  Event 7-18
Daytime Running Lamps/Automatic Headlamp
  System 3-14
Defensive Driving 4-2
Delayed Entry Lighting 3-16
Delayed Exit Lighting 3-16
Delayed Locking 2-10
DIC Compass 3-47
Disc, MP3 3-77
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Dome Lamp 3-15
Door
  Automatic Door Lock 2-10
  Delayed Locking 2-10
  Locks 2-9
  Power Door Locks 2-10
  Programmable Automatic Door Unlock 2-11
  Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-42
  DIC Operation and Displays 3-42
  DIC Vehicle Customization 3-57
  DIC Warnings and Messages 3-49
Driving
  At Night 4-13
  Before a Long Trip 4-15
  Defensive 4-2
  Drunk 4-3
  Highway Hypnosis 4-15
  Hill and Mountain Roads 4-16
  In Rain and on Wet Roads 4-14
  Loss of Control 4-11
  Off-Road Recovery 4-11
  Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-20
  Winter 4-17
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 4-2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

E

E85 Fuel 5-8
EDR 7-18
Electrical Equipment
  Add-On Equipment 5-96
Electrical System
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-97
  Headlamp Wiring 5-97
  Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-97
  Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-97
  Underhood Fuse Block 5-98
  Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-97
Electronic Immobilizer
  PASS-Key® III+ 2-17
Electronic Immobilizer Operation
  PASS-Key® III+ 2-18
Electronic Stability Control 4-6
Engine
  Air Cleaner/Filter 5-21
  Check and Service Engine Soon Lamp 3-36
  Compartment Overview 5-14
  Coolant 5-28
  Coolant Heater 2-22
  Coolant Temperature Gage 3-34
  Coolant Temperature Warning Light 3-34
  Cooling System 5-26
  Drive Belt Routing 6-14
  Exhaust 2-30
  Oil 5-17
Engine (cont.)
  Oil Life System 5-20
  Overheated Protection Operating Mode 5-34
  Overheating 5-31
  Starting 2-21
Entry Lighting 3-15
Event Data Recorders 7-18
Extender, Safety Belt 1-33
Exterior Lamps 3-12

F

Filter
  Engine Air Cleaner 5-21
Finish Damage 5-95
Flashers, Hazard Warning 3-6
Flash-to-Pass 3-8
Flat Tire 5-75
Flat Tire, Changing 5-76
Flat Tire, Storing 5-85
Fluid
  Automatic Transmission 5-24
  Power Steering 5-34
  Windshield Washer 5-35
Fog Lamp
  Fog 3-14
Fog Lamp Light 3-40
Folding Rear Seat 1-10

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel 5-5
Additives 5-6
California Fuel 5-6
E85 (85% Ethanol) 5-8
Economy Driving 4-2
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-12
Filling the Tank 5-10
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-9
Gage 3-41
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-6
Fuel Management, Active 2-23
Fuses
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-97
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-97
Underhood Fuse Block 5-98
Windshield Wiper 5-97

G

Gage
Speedometer 3-26
Tachometer 3-26
Gages
Engine Coolant Temperature 3-34
Fuel 3-41
Garage Door Opener 2-36
Gasoline
Octane 5-5
Specifications 5-6
Glove Box 2-43
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-7

H

Halogen Bulbs 5-45
Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Head Restraints 1-2
Headlamp
Aiming 5-45
Headlamp Wiring 5-97
Headlamps
Bulb Replacement 5-45
Daytime Running Lamps/Automatic Headlamp System 3-14
Exterior Lamps 3-12
Flash-to-Pass 3-8
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker, and Parking Lamps 5-46
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
Heated Seats 1-6
Heater 3-20
Engine Coolant 2-22
Highbeam On Light 3-40

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Highway Hypnosis 4-15
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-16
Hood
  Checking Things Under 5-12
  Release 5-13
Horn 3-6
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18

I

Ignition Positions 2-20
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 1-37
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-60
Instrument Panel
  Brightness 3-15
  Cluster 3-25
  Overview 3-4
Introduction 6-2

J

Jump Starting 5-40

K

Keyless Entry, Remote Operation 2-5
Keyless Entry System 2-4
Keys 2-3

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 5-54
Lamp
  Malfunction Indicator 3-36
Lamps
  Courtesy 3-15
  Dome 3-15
  License Plate 5-51
  Mirror Reading 3-17
  Reading 3-17
Lap Belt 1-32
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-27
LATCH System for Child Restraints 1-45
Lighting
  Delayed Entry 3-16
  Delayed Exit 3-16
  Entry 3-15
  Parade Dimming 3-16
Lights
  Airbag Readiness 3-28
  Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 3-31
  Brake System Warning 3-30
  Charging System 3-30
  Cruise Control 3-40
  Electronic StabiliTrak Control Indicator 3-33
  Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 3-34
  Exterior Lamps 3-12
  Flash-to-Pass 3-8

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights (cont.)
Fog Lamp 3-40
Highbeam On 3-40
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
Oil Pressure 3-39
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-29
Safety Belt Reminders 3-27
Security 3-39
Tire Pressure 3-35
Traction Control System (TCS) Warning 3-32
Loading Your Vehicle 4-20
Locks
Automatic Door Lock 2-10
Delayed Locking 2-10
Door 2-9
Lockout Protection 2-12
Power Door 2-10
Programmable Automatic Door Unlock 2-11
Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
Loss of Control 4-11
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 1-45
Lumbar
Manual Controls 1-6

M

Maintenance
Footnotes 6-7
Maintenance Schedule
Additional Required Services 6-6
At Each Fuel Fill 6-8
At Least Once a Month 6-9
At Least Once a Year 6-9
Maintenance Record 6-15
Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-13
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Owner Checks and Services 6-8
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Using 6-3
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-36
Manual Lumbar Controls 1-6
Manual Seats 1-4
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-49
Mirror Reading Lamps 3-17

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 2-32
Manual Rearview Mirror 2-32
Outside Convex Mirror 2-33
Outside Heated Mirrors 2-33
Outside Power Mirrors 2-32
MP3 3-77

N

Navigation System, Privacy 7-19
Net
Convenience 2-43
New Vehicle Break-In 2-19

O

Odometer 3-26
Off-Road
Recovery 4-11
Oil
Engine 5-17
Engine Oil Life System 5-20
Pressure Light 3-39
Older Children, Restraints 1-34
Online Owner Center 7-5
OnStar, Privacy 7-19
OnStar® System, see OnStar® Manual 2-33
Operation, Universal Home Remote System 2-37
Outlet Adjustment 3-23
Outlets
Accessory Power 3-18
Outside
Convex Mirror 2-33
Heated Mirrors 2-33
Power Mirrors 2-32
Overheated Engine Protection
Operating Mode 5-34
Owner Checks and Services 6-8
Owners, Canadian ii

P

Paint, Damage 5-95
Parade Dimming 3-16
Park
Shifting Into 2-27
Shifting Out of 2-29
Parking
Over Things That Burn 2-30
Parking Brake 2-26
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-29
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 3-23
Passenger Sensing System 1-65
Passing 4-11
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-17
PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer
Operation 2-18

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Perchlorate Materials Requirements, California 5-4
Phone
Bluetooth® 3-82
Power
Door Locks 2-10
Electrical System 5-97
Retained Accessory (RAP) 2-21
Seat 1-5
Steering Fluid 5-34
Windows 2-15
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts 1-32
Pressure Cap 5-31
Privacy 7-18
Navigation System 7-19
OnStar 7-19
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 7-19
Programmable Automatic Door Unlock 2-11
Proposition 65 Warning, California 5-4

R

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID), Privacy 7-19
Radio(s) 3-66
Radios
Reception 3-95
Setting the Clock 3-64
Theft-Deterrent 3-93
Reading Lamps 3-17
Rear Door Security Locks 2-11
Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
Rear Storage Areas 2-43
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming 2-32
Rearview Mirrors 2-32
Reclining Seatbacks 1-7
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-12
Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-26
Reimbursement Program, GM Mobility 7-7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System,
Operation 2-5
Remote Vehicle Start 2-7
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the
Spare Tire 5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Replacement Bulbs 5-51
Replacement Parts, Maintenance 6-13
Reporting Safety Defects
Reporting Safety Defects to the
United States Government 7-16
Reporting Safety Defects to the
Canadian Government 7-16
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-16
Restraint System Check
Checking the Restraint Systems 1-73
Replacing Restraint System Parts After
a Crash 1-74
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-21

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ride Control Systems 4-6
Electronic Stability (ESC) 4-6
Roadside Assistance Program 7-8
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-20
Roof
Sunroof 2-44
Running the Vehicle While Parked 2-31

S

Safety Belt Reminders 3-27
Safety Belts
Care of 5-92
Extender 1-33
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-18
Lap Belt 1-32
Lap-Shoulder Belt 1-27
Safety Belts Are for Everyone 1-13
Use During Pregnancy 1-32
Safety Defects
Reporting to General Motors 7-16
Reporting to the United States Government 7-16
Safety Warnings and Symbols iii
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Additional Required Services 6-6
Scheduling Appointments 7-10
Seats
Center Seat 1-10
Head Restraints 1-2
Heated Seats 1-6
Manual Lumbar 1-6
Power Seats 1-5
Reclining Seatbacks 1-7
Split Folding Rear Seat 1-10
Securing a Child Restraint
Center Front Seat Position 1-53
Rear Seat Position 1-50
Right Front Seat Position 1-54
Security Light 3-39
Service 5-3
Accessories and Modifications 5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of the Vehicle 5-5
Doing Your Own Work 5-4
Engine Soon Lamp 3-36
Publications Ordering Information 7-17
Scheduling Appointments 7-10
Service Parts Identification Label 5-96
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-71
Setting the Clock 3-64
Sheet Metal Damage 5-95
Shifting
Out of Park 2-29

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting Into Park 2-27
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 3-7
Spare Tire
  Compact 5-88
  Installing 5-79
  Removing 5-77
  Storing 5-85
Specifications and Capacities 5-101
Speedometer 3-26
Split Folding Rear Seat 1-10
StabiliTrak Control Indicator Light, Electronic 3-33
Start Vehicle, Remote 2-7
Starting the Engine 2-21
Steering 4-9
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio 3-94
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel 3-6
Storage Areas
  Center Console 2-43
  Convenience Net 2-43
  Cupholders 2-43
  Glove Box 2-43
  Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
  Sunglasses Storage Compartment 2-43
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice, or Snow 4-19
Sun Visors 2-16
Sunroof 2-44

T

Tachometer 3-26
Taillamps
  Turn Signal, Sidemarker, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 5-49
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-6
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-93
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
  Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
  PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer 2-17
  PASS-Key® III+ Electronic Immobilizer Operation 2-18
Tilt Wheel 3-6
Time, Setting 3-64
Tire
  Pressure Light 3-35
Tires 5-53
  Aluminum Wheels, Cleaning 5-94
  Buying New Tires 5-69
  Chains 5-74
  Changing a Flat Tire 5-76
  Cleaning 5-95
  Compact Spare 5-88
  Different Size 5-71
  If a Tire Goes Flat 5-75

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires (cont.)
Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-60
Inspection and Rotation 5-67
Installing the Spare Tire 5-79
Pressure Monitor Operation 5-63
Pressure Monitor System 5-62
Removing the Flat Tire 5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-77
Sidewall Labeling 5-54
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-85
Terminology and Definitions 5-57
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-71
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-73
Wheel Replacement 5-73
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-68
Towing
Recreational Vehicle 4-26
Towing a Trailer 4-28
Your Vehicle 4-26
Traction
Control System (TCS) 4-8
Control System Warning Light 3-32
Transmission
Fluid, Automatic 5-24
Transmission Operation, Automatic 2-24
Transportation, Courtesy 7-11
Trunk 2-12
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-7
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-71
Universal Home Remote System 2-36
Operation 2-37

V

Vehicle
Control 4-3
Loading 4-20
Running While Parked 2-31
Symbols iii
Vehicle Customization, DIC 3-57
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 7-18
Vehicle Data Recording, Radio
Frequency (RFID) 7-19
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN) 5-96
Service Parts Identification Label 5-96
Vehicle, Remote Start 2-7
Ventilation Adjustment 3-23
Visors 2-16

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

W

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-24
Warnings
  DIC Warnings and Messages 3-49
  Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
  Safety and Symbols iii
Wheels
  Alignment and Tire Balance 5-73
  Different Size 5-71
  Replacement 5-73
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-68
Where to Put the Child Restraint 1-43
Windows 2-14
  Power 2-15
Windshield
  Washer 3-9
  Washer Fluid 5-35
  Wiper Blade Replacement 5-51
  Wiper Blades, Cleaning 5-94
  Wiper Fuses 5-97
  Wipers 3-8
Winter Driving 4-17

X

XM Radio Messages 3-81
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-96

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine